FORD **TOURNEO COURIER / TRANSIT COURIER** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2014

All rights reserved.

Part Number: ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) 04/2014 20140507211035

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Manual....5
Symbols Glossary....5
Data Recording....7
Replacement Parts Recommendation....8
Mobile Communications Equipment....8

At a Glance - Tourneo

Front Exterior Overview....10
Rear Exterior Overview....11
Vehicle Interior Overview....12
Instrument Panel Overview - LHD....13
Instrument Panel Overview - RHD....14

At a Glance - Transit

Front Exterior Overview....16
Rear Exterior Overview....17
Vehicle Interior Overview....18
Instrument Panel Overview - LHD....19
Instrument Panel Overview - RHD....20

Child Safety

Installing Child Seats....22
Child Seat Positioning....26
Child Safety Locks....29

Safety Belts

Fastening the Safety Belts....30
Safety Belt Minder....31

Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation....32
Driver Airbag....32
Passenger Airbag....33
Side Airbags....34
Driver Knee Airbag....34
Side Curtain Airbags....34

Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies....36
Remote Control....36
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....37

Locks

Locking and Unlocking....39
Manual Liftgate....42

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System....43
Anti-Theft Alarm....43

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel....46
Audio Control....46
Voice Control....47
Cruise Control....47

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers....48
Autowipers....48
Windshield Washers....49
Rear Window Wiper and Washers....49

Lighting

General Information....51
Lighting Control....51
Autolamps....52
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....52
Headlamp Exit Delay....52
Daytime Running Lamps....53
Front Fog Lamps....53
Rear Fog Lamps....53
Headlamp Leveling....53
Direction Indicators....54
Interior Lamps....54

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Table of Contents

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows....56
Power Windows....56
Exterior Mirrors....56
Interior Mirror....57
Sliding Door Window....57

Instrument Cluster

Gauges....58
Warning Lamps and Indicators....59
Audible Warnings and Indicators....63

Information Displays

General Information....64
Clock....66
Trip Computer....67
Information Messages....67

Climate Control

Principle of Operation....74
Air Vents....74
Manual Climate Control....75
Automatic Climate Control....76
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....78
Heated Windows and Mirrors....79
Heated Windshield....79
Heated Rear Window....80
Heated Exterior Mirrors....80

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position....81
Head Restraints....81
Manual Seats....82
Rear Seats....84
Heated Seats....86

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points....87
Cigar Lighter....87

Storage Compartments

Cup Holders....88
Center Console....88
Overhead Console....89
Folding Tray....89
Bottle Holder....90
Under Seat Storage....90

Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information....91
Ignition Switch....91
Steering Wheel Lock....91
Starting a Gasoline Engine....92
Starting a Diesel Engine....92
Diesel Particulate Filter....93
Switching Off the Engine....94
Engine Block Heater....94

Unique Driving Characteristics

Auto-Start-Stop....96

Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions....98
Fuel Quality - Gasoline....99
Fuel Quality - Diesel....99
Running Out of Fuel....99
Catalytic Converter....101
Refueling....101
Fuel Consumption....103

Transmission

Manual Transmission....104

Brakes

General Information....105

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....105
Parking Brake....105
Hill Start Assist....106

Stability Control
Principle of Operation....107
Using Stability Control....107

Parking Aids
Principle of Operation....108
Parking Aid....108
Rear View Camera....109

Cruise Control
Principle of Operation....112
Using Cruise Control....112

Driving Aids
Speed Limiter....114
Eco Mode....115

Load Carrying
General Information....116
Luggage Anchor Points....116
Cargo Nets....116
Luggage Covers....117
Roof Racks and Load Carriers....118
Folding Bulkhead....119

Towing
Towing a Trailer....120
Trailer Sway Control....121
Tow Ball....121
Towing Points....124
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels....125

Driving Hints
Breaking-In....126
Reduced Engine Performance....126
Economical Driving....126
Cold Weather Precautions....127
Driving Through Water....127
Floor Mats....127

Roadside Emergencies
Hazard Warning Flashers....129
First Aid Kit....129
Warning Triangle....129
Fuel Shutoff....129
Jump Starting the Vehicle....130

Fuses
Fuse Box Locations....132
Fuse Specification Chart....133
Changing a Fuse....139

Maintenance
General Information....141
Opening and Closing the Hood....141
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™, LHD....143
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™, RHD....144
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, LHD....145
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, RHD....146
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel, LHD....147
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel, RHD....148
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™....149
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel....149
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel....149
Engine Oil Check....149
Engine Coolant Check....150

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Brake and Clutch Fluid Check.....151
Washer Fluid Check.....151
Changing the 12V Battery.....151
Checking the Wiper Blades.....152
Changing the Wiper Blades.....152
Changing a Bulb.....153
Bulb Specification Chart.....157

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior.....159
Cleaning the Interior.....159
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....160
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....160

Wheels and Tires

General Information.....161
Temporary Mobility Kit.....161
Tire Care.....165
Using Winter Tires.....165
Using Snow Chains.....166
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....166
Changing a Road Wheel.....169
Technical Specifications.....174

Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions - Tourneo.....175
Vehicle Dimensions - Transit.....176
Towbar Dimensions.....177
Vehicle Identification Plate.....178
Vehicle Identification Number.....179
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....179
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....180
Capacities and Specifications - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel.....181
Fuel Consumption Figures.....182

Audio System

General Information.....184
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM.....185
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC.....194
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/Navigation System.....199
Digital Radio.....205
Audio Input Jack.....206
USB Port.....207
Audio Troubleshooting.....207

SYNC™

General Information.....208
Using Voice Recognition.....209
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....212
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....223
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....230
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....236

Navigation

Navigation.....244

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility.....253
End User License Agreement.....254

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to your vehicle.*

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle. However, the essential information in the illustrations is always correct.*

Note: *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

A Right-hand side
B Left-hand side

Protecting the Environment

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.


Safety alert


See Owner's Manual


Air conditioning system



Anti-lock braking system

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.


Avoid smoking, flames or sparks


Battery


Battery acid


Brake fluid - non petroleum based


Brake system


Cabin air filter


Check fuel cap


Child safety door lock or unlock


Child seat lower anchor


Child seat tether anchor


Cruise control


Do not open when hot


Engine air filter


Engine coolant


Engine coolant temperature


Engine oil


Explosive gas


Fan warning


Fasten safety belt


Front airbag


Front fog lamps


Fuel pump reset


Fuse compartment


Hazard warning flashers


Heated rear window



Heated windshield


Interior luggage compartment release


Jack


Keep out of reach of children


Lighting control


Low tire pressure warning


Maintain correct fluid level


Note operating instructions


Panic alarm


Parking aid


Parking brake


Power steering fluid


Power windows front/rear


Power window lockout


Service engine soon


Side airbag


Shield the eyes


Stability control


Windshield wash and wipe

DATA RECORDING

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and errors.

In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels).
- Status messages of the vehicle and its individual components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions/rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration).
- Malfunction and defects in important system components (e.g. lighting and brake system).
- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature).

These data are exclusively technical and help identification and correction of errors as well as optimisation of vehicle functions. Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (including manufacturers) are able to read out this technical information from the event and error data storage modules using special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information. After an error has been corrected, these data are deleted from the error storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

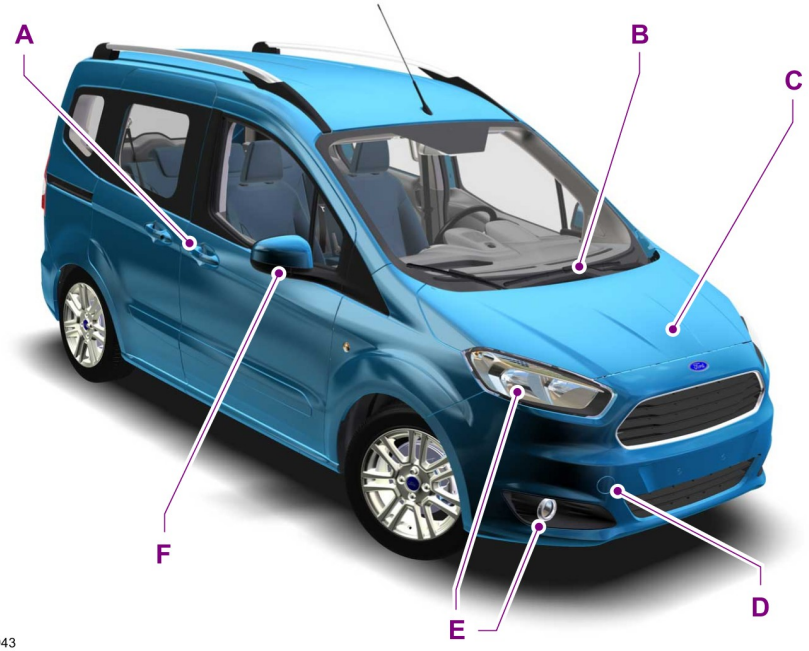
Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

FRONT EXTERIOR OVERVIEW

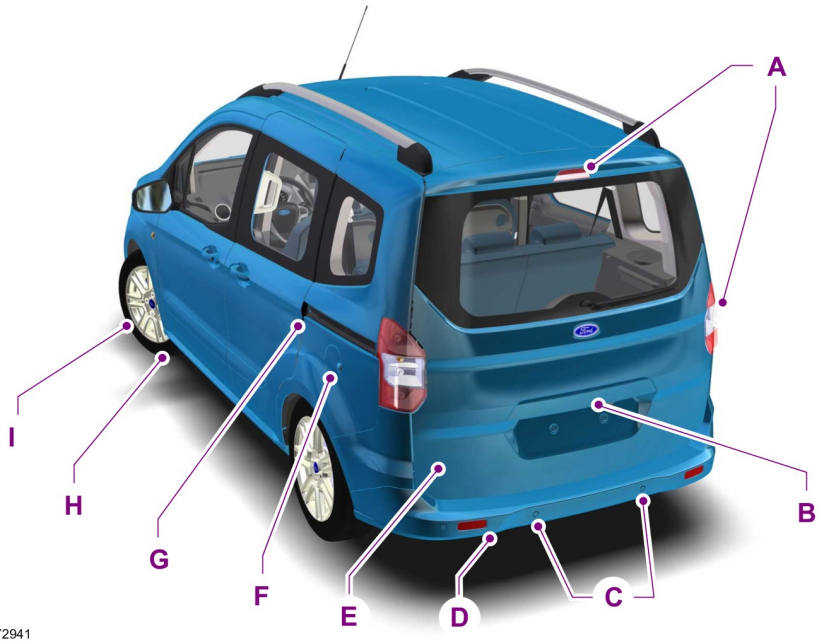


E172943

A. See **Locks** (page 39).
B. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 152).
C. See **Maintenance** (page 141).
D. See **Towing Points** (page 124).
E. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 153).
F. See **Heated Exterior Mirrors** (page 80).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

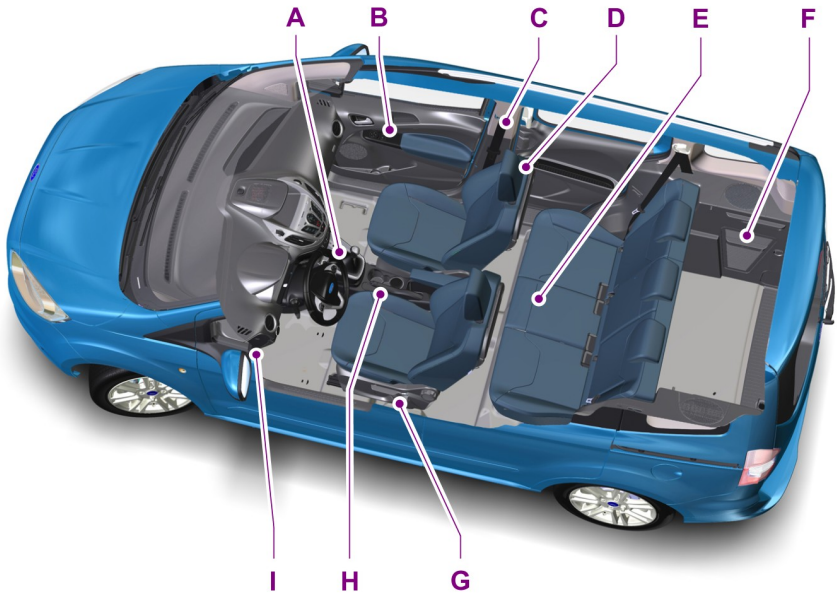
REAR EXTERIOR OVERVIEW



A. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 153).
B. See **Locks** (page 39).
C. See **Parking Aid** (page 108).
D. See **Towing Points** (page 124).
E. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 169). See **Temporary Mobility Kit** (page 161). See **Towing Points** (page 124).
F. See **Refueling** (page 101).
G. See **Child Safety Locks** (page 29).
H. See **Technical Specifications** (page 174).
I. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 161).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

VEHICLE INTERIOR OVERVIEW

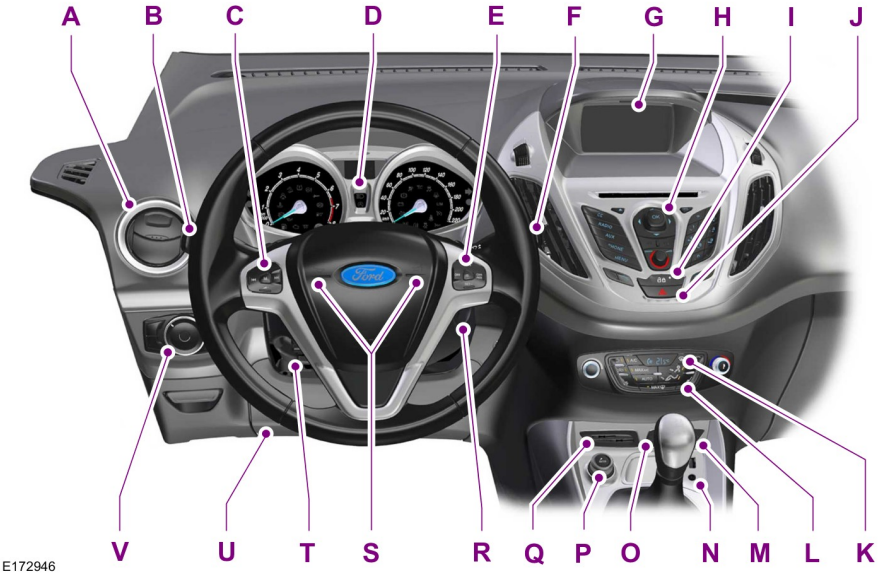


E172945

A. See **Manual Transmission** (page 104).
B. See **Power Windows** (page 56). See **Exterior Mirrors** (page 56).
C. See **Fastening the Safety Belts** (page 30).
D. See **Head Restraints** (page 81).
E. See **Rear Seats** (page 84).
F. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 169). See **Temporary Mobility Kit** (page 161). See **Towing Points** (page 124).
G. See **Manual Seats** (page 82).
H. See **Parking Brake** (page 105).
I. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 141).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW - LHD

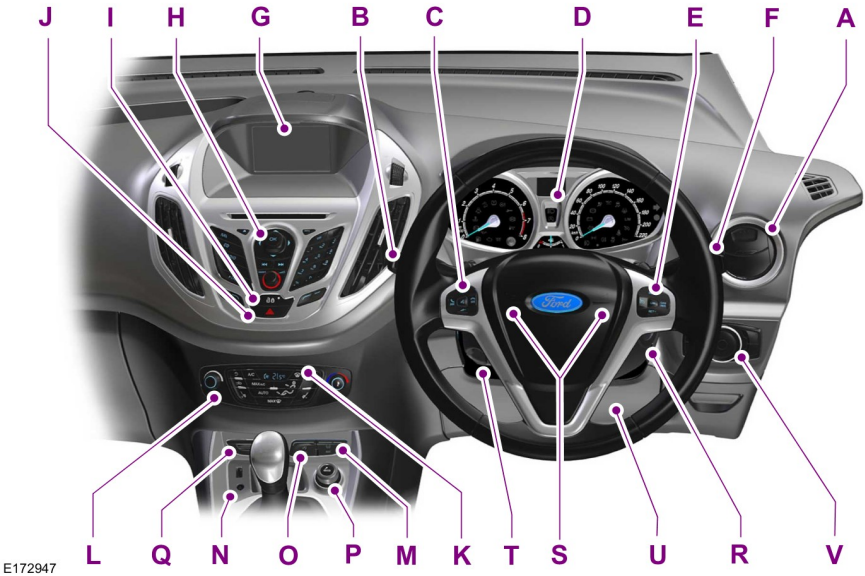


A See **Air Vents** (page 74).
B See **Direction Indicators** (page 54). See **Lighting Control** (page 51).
C See **Audio Control** (page 46). See **Voice Control** (page 47).
D See **Instrument Cluster** (page 58).
E See **Cruise Control** (page 112). See **Speed Limiter** (page 114).
F See **Wipers and Washers** (page 48).
G See **Information Displays** (page 64).
H See **Audio Control** (page 46). See **Voice Control** (page 47).
I See **Locks** (page 39).
J See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 129).
K See **Heated Windshield** (page 79). See **Heated Rear Window** (page 80).
L See **Climate Control** (page 74).
M See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 166).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

N See **Audio Input Jack** (page 206).
O See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 96).
P See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 87).
Q See **Passenger Airbag** (page 33).
R See **Ignition Switch** (page 91).
S Horn
T See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 46).
U See **Driver Knee Airbag** (page 34).
V See **Lighting** (page 51).

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW - RHD



E172947

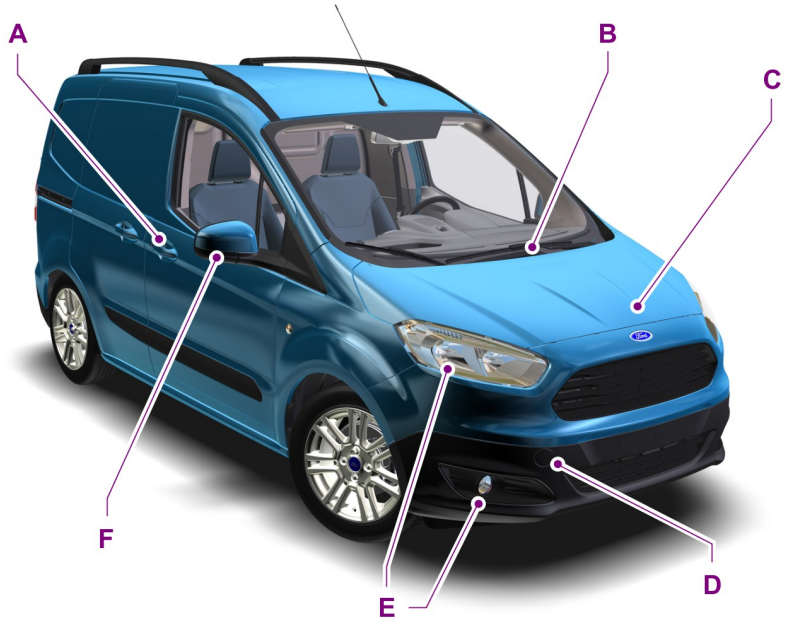
A See **Air Vents** (page 74).
B See **Direction Indicators** (page 54). See **Lighting Control** (page 51).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

C See **Audio Control** (page 46). See **Voice Control** (page 47).
D See **Instrument Cluster** (page 58).
E See **Cruise Control** (page 112). See **Speed Limiter** (page 114).
F See **Wipers and Washers** (page 48).
G See **Information Displays** (page 64).
H See **Audio Control** (page 46). See **Voice Control** (page 47).
I See **Locks** (page 39).
J See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 129).
K See **Heated Windshield** (page 79). See **Heated Rear Window** (page 80).
L See **Climate Control** (page 74).
M See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 166).
N See **Audio Input Jack** (page 206).
O See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 96).
P See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 87).
Q See **Passenger Airbag** (page 33).
R See **Ignition Switch** (page 91).
S Horn
T See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 46).
U See **Driver Knee Airbag** (page 34).
V See **Lighting** (page 51).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

FRONT EXTERIOR OVERVIEW

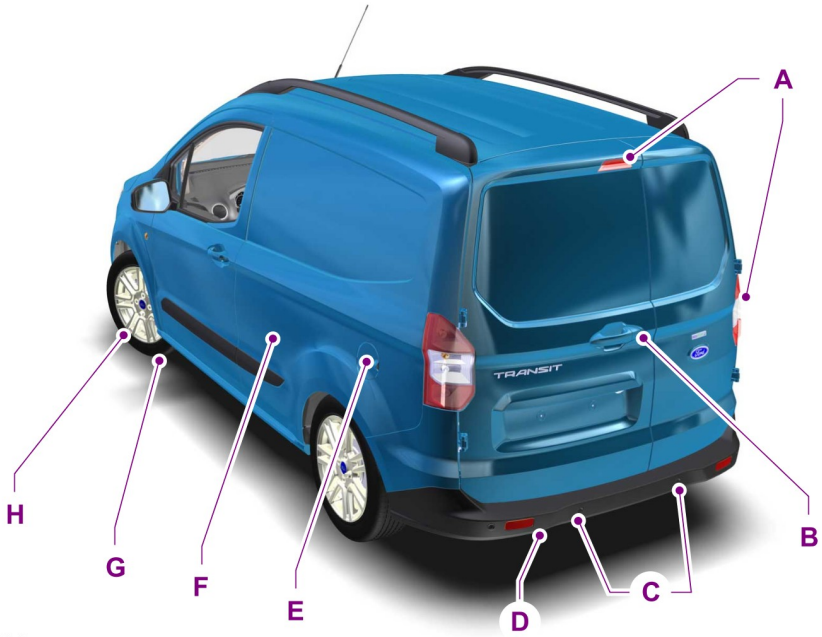


E172940

A. See **Locks** (page 39).
B. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 152).
C. See **Maintenance** (page 141).
D. See **Towing Points** (page 124).
E. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 153).
F. See **Heated Exterior Mirrors** (page 80).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

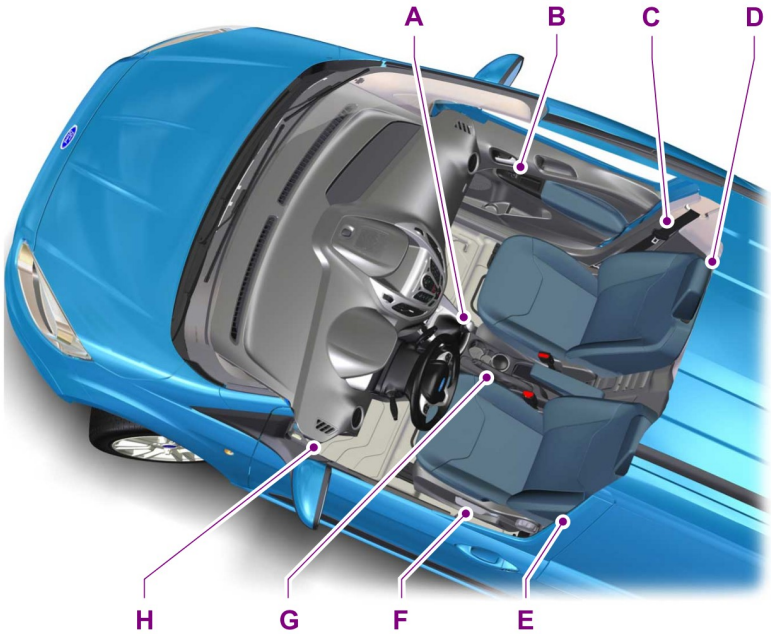
REAR EXTERIOR OVERVIEW



A. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 153).
B. See **Locks** (page 39).
C. See **Parking Aid** (page 108).
D. See **Towing Points** (page 124).
E. See **Refueling** (page 101).
F. See **Temporary Mobility Kit** (page 161). See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 169). See **Towing Points** (page 124).
G. See **Technical Specifications** (page 174).
H. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 161).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

VEHICLE INTERIOR OVERVIEW

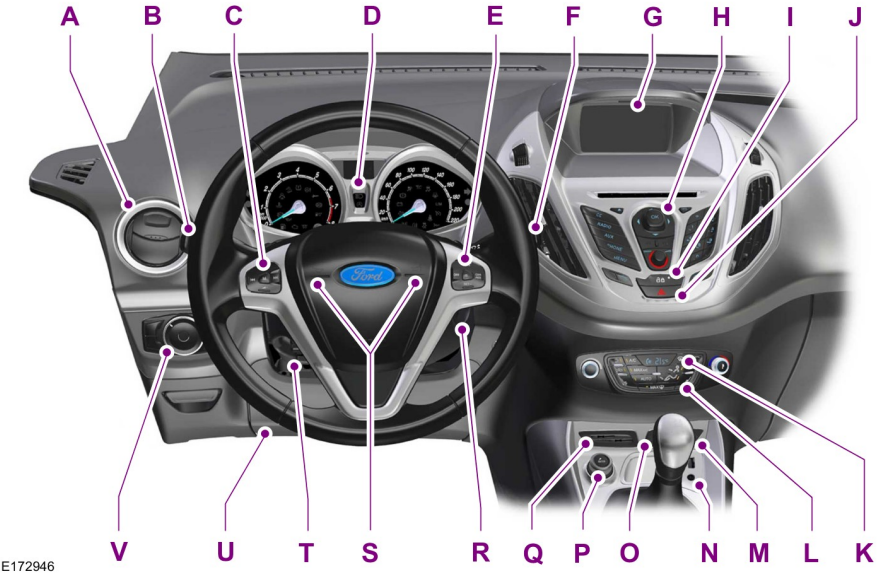


E172944

A. See **Manual Transmission** (page 104).
B. See **Power Windows** (page 56). See **Exterior Mirrors** (page 56).
C. See **Fastening the Safety Belts** (page 30).
D. See **Head Restraints** (page 81).
E. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 169). See **Temporary Mobility Kit** (page 161). See **Towing Points** (page 124).
F. See **Manual Seats** (page 82).
G. See **Parking Brake** (page 105).
H. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 141).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW - LHD

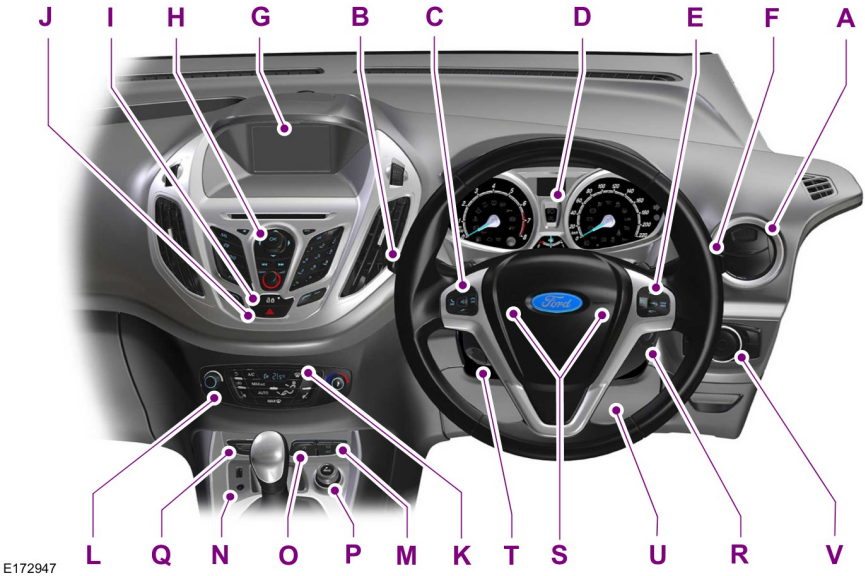


A See **Air Vents** (page 74).
B See **Direction Indicators** (page 54). See **Lighting Control** (page 51).
C See **Audio Control** (page 46). See **Voice Control** (page 47).
D See **Instrument Cluster** (page 58).
E See **Cruise Control** (page 112). See **Speed Limiter** (page 114).
F See **Wipers and Washers** (page 48).
G See **Information Displays** (page 64).
H See **Audio Control** (page 46). See **Voice Control** (page 47).
I See **Locks** (page 39).
J See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 129).
K See **Heated Windshield** (page 79). See **Heated Rear Window** (page 80).
L See **Climate Control** (page 74).
M See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 166).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

N See **Audio Input Jack** (page 206).
O See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 96).
P See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 87).
Q See **Passenger Airbag** (page 33).
R See **Ignition Switch** (page 91).
S Horn
T See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 46).
U See **Driver Knee Airbag** (page 34).
V See **Lighting** (page 51).

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW - RHD



E172947

A See **Air Vents** (page 74).
B See **Direction Indicators** (page 54). See **Lighting Control** (page 51).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

C See **Audio Control** (page 46). See **Voice Control** (page 47).
D See **Instrument Cluster** (page 58).
E See **Cruise Control** (page 112). See **Speed Limiter** (page 114).
F See **Wipers and Washers** (page 48).
G See **Information Displays** (page 64).
H See **Audio Control** (page 46). See **Voice Control** (page 47).
I See **Locks** (page 39).
J See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 129).
K See **Heated Windshield** (page 79). See **Heated Rear Window** (page 80).
L See **Climate Control** (page 74).
M See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 166).
N See **Audio Input Jack** (page 206).
O See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 96).
P See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 87).
Q See **Passenger Airbag** (page 33).
R See **Ignition Switch** (page 91).
S Horn
T See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 46).
U See **Driver Knee Airbag** (page 34).
V See **Lighting** (page 51).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

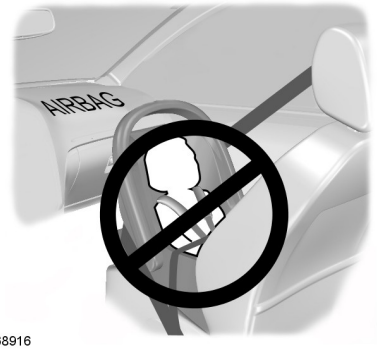
INSTALLING CHILD SEATS



E161855



E133140



E68916

WARNINGS

Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child seat on a seat protected by an active air bag in front of it!

WARNINGS

Your vehicle may have a passenger airbag deactivation switch. You must switch the airbag off when using a rearward facing child seat on the front seat. Make sure you switch the airbag back on following removal of the rearward facing child seat. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Use an approved child seat to secure children less than 59 inches (150 centimeters) tall on the rear seat. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child seat. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not modify child seats in any way. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not leave unattended children in your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child seats checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Only child seats certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from an authorized dealer.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Note: *Mandatory use of child seats varies from country to country.*

Child Seats for Different Mass Groups

Use the correct child seat as follows:

Rearward Facing Baby Safety Seat



E68918

Secure children that weigh less than 29 pounds (13 kilograms) in a rearward facing baby safety seat (Group 0+) on the rear seat.

Child Safety Seat



E68920

Secure children that weigh between 29 pounds (13 kilograms) and 40 pounds (18 kilograms) in a child safety seat (Group 1) on the rear seat.

Booster Seats

WARNINGS

Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the safety belt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a safety belt that is slack or twisted. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not put the safety belt under your child's arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure that your child sits in an upright position. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure the child seat rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seatback to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 81). Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child seat. See **Head Restraints** (page 81). Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Secure children that weigh more than 33 pounds (15 kilograms) but are less than 59 inches (150 centimeters) tall in a booster seat or a booster cushion.

Booster Seat (Group 2)



E70710

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult safety belt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion (Group 3)



E68924

ISOFIX Anchor Points



E174928

WARNING

Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child seats.

The ISOFIX system has two rigid attachment arms on the child seat. These attach to anchor points on the second row seats, where the cushion and backrest meet. For child seats with a top tether, tether anchor points are on the rear of the second row seats.

Note: *When you are purchasing an ISOFIX seat, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See* ***Child Seat Positioning*** *(page 26).*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Attaching a Child Seat With Top Tethers

WARNING

Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installing a child seat with a top tether.



E173021

Attaching a Child Seat With a Support Leg

WARNINGS

Make sure the support leg is long enough to reach the vehicle floor. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure that the child seat manufacturer lists your vehicle as suitable for use with this type of child seat. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installing a child seat with a support leg.



E173024

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

WARNINGS

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child seats. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child seat on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!

When using a child seat with a support leg, the support leg must rest securely on the floor. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

When using a child seat with a safety belt, make sure that the safety belt is not slack or twisted. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNINGS

Make sure the child seat rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seatback to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 81). Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child seat. See **Head Restraints** (page 81). Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Note: *When using a child seat on a front seat, always adjust the front passenger seat as far back as possible. If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the safety belt without slack remaining, adjust the seatback to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat. See* ***Seats*** *(page 81).*

Seating positions	Mass group categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	Up to 22 lbs (10 kg)	Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)	20 - 40 lbs (9 - 18 kg)	33 - 55 lbs (15 - 25 kg)	46 - 79 lbs (22 - 36 kg)
Front passenger seat with airbag **ON**	X	X	UF[1]	UF[1]	UF[1]
Front passenger seat with airbag **OFF**	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]
Fold flat front passenger seat with airbag **ON**	X	X	UF[1]	UF[1]	UF[1]

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Seating positions	Mass group categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	Up to 22 lbs (10 kg)	Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)	20 - 40 lbs (9 - 18 kg)	33 - 55 lbs (15 - 25 kg)	46 - 79 lbs (22 - 36 kg)
Fold flat front passenger seat with airbag **OFF**	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]
Rear seats	U	U	U	U	U

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

U[1] Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group. We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, on a rear seat.

UF[1] Suitable for universal category forward facing child seats approved for use in this mass group. We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, on a rear seat.

ISOFIX Child Seats

Seating positions		Mass group categories			
		0	0+	I	
		Rear facing		Front facing	Rear facing
		Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)		20 - 40 lbs (9 - 18 kg)	
Front passenger seat	Size class	Not ISOFIX equipped			
	Size type				
Rear outboard seat ISOFIX	Size class	C, D, E[1]		A, B, B1[1]	C, D[1]
	Size type	IL[2]		IL[2], IUF[3]	IL[2]

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Seating positions		Mass group categories			
		0	0+	I	
		Rear facing		Front facing	Rear facing
		Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)		20 - 40 lbs (9 - 18 kg)	
Rear center seat	Size class	Not ISOFIX equipped			
	Size type				

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraints systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraints systems in the universal category.

[1]The capital letters A to G define the ISOFIX size class for both universal and semi-universal child restraints systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

[2]At the time of going to print, the recommended Group O+ ISOFIX baby safety seat is the Britax Roemer Baby Safe. See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.

[3]At the time of going to print, the recommended Group 1 ISOFIX child seat is the Britax Roemer Duo. See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.

I-Size Child Seats

	Front passenger seat	Rear outboard seats	Rear center seat
I-size child restraint systems	X	I-U	X

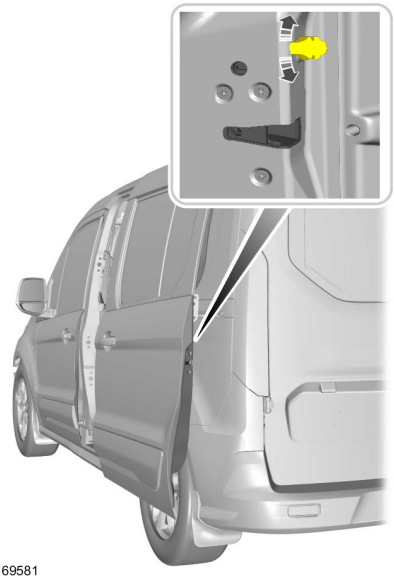
I-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing I-size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with I-size child restraint systems.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

WARNING

You cannot open the doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



E169581

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

FASTENING THE SAFETY BELTS

WARNINGS

You have not fastened the safety belt correctly if you do not hear a distinct click. Failure to fasten the safety belt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

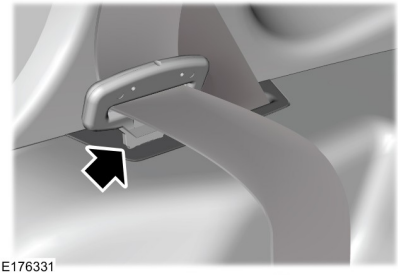
Make sure that your safety belt is securely stored away and is not outside your vehicle when closing the door. Failure of an occupant to be able to use a trapped safety belt increases the risk of serious personal injury or death.



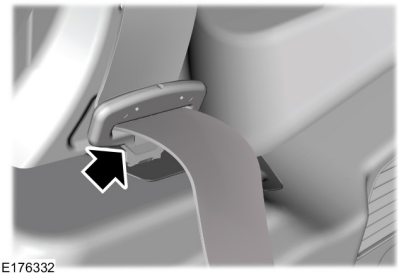
E74124



E174332



E176331



E176332

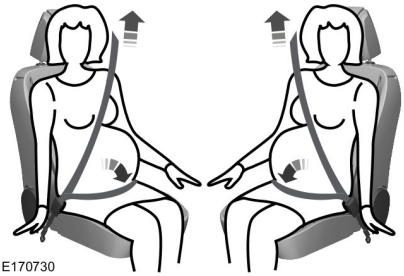
Note: *When not in use, place the safety belts into the slots on the outboard trim.*

Pull the safety belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if your vehicle is on a slope.

Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click.

To release the safety belt press the red button on the buckle. Hold the tongue and let the safety belt retract to its stowed position.

Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy



WARNING

Position the safety belt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap. Failure to adjust the safety belt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

SAFETY BELT MINDER

WARNING

The system will only provide protection when you use the safety belt correctly.

The warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound when the following conditions have been met:

- The front safety belts have not been fastened.
- Your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

It will also illuminate when a front safety belt is unfastened when your vehicle is moving.

If you do not fasten your safety belt both the audible and visual warnings will switch off automatically after approximately five minutes.

Switching the Safety Belt Minder Off

See an authorized dealer.

Rear Safety Belt Minder

WARNING

If multiple belts are unfastened within a few seconds of each other, only one audible chime will sound.

Note: *Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to confirm the message.*

The following status updates will be shown in the display:

- Tick symbol: Fastened safety belt.
- Exclamation mark: A safety belt that has been unfastened when your vehicle is moving. You will also hear an audible chime.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Wear a safety belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the safety belt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 81). Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and safety belts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. In the event of a crash, hard objects could cause serious personal injury or death.

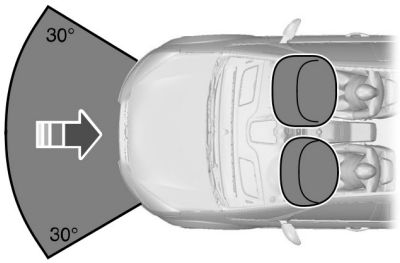
Do not puncture the seat with sharp objects. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

Note: *Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.*

DRIVER AIRBAG

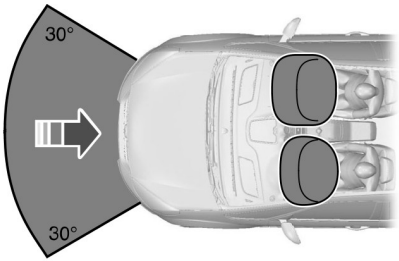


E74302

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

PASSENGER AIRBAG



E74302

The airbag will deploy during a significant frontal crash or crashes that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal crashes, sideways crashes, rear crashes or overturns, the airbag will not deploy.

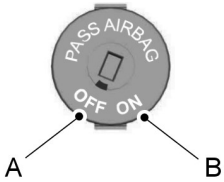
Switching the Passenger Airbag Off

WARNING

You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



E71313



E71312

A Switch off

B Switch on

Turn the switch to position A.



E175944

When you switch the ignition on, check that the airbag deactivation warning lamp illuminates.

Note: *The key switch is located on the end of the instrument panel on the passenger side with the airbag deactivation warning lamp in the center console.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Switching the Passenger Airbag On

WARNING

You must switch the passenger airbag on when you are not using a rearward child seat on the front passenger seat. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Turn the switch to position B.

When you switch the ignition on, check that the airbag deactivation warning lamp does not illuminate.

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNING

Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer.



E72658

The airbags are located inside the seatback of the front seats. There is a label attached to the side of the seatback to indicate this.

The airbag will deploy during significant lateral collisions. The airbag will not deploy in minor lateral and frontal collisions, rear collisions, or overturns.

DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

WARNING

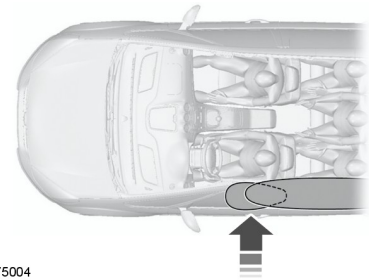
Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The airbag will deploy during frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing a cushion between the driver's knees and the steering column. During overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the knee airbag will not deploy.

For item location: See **Instrument Panel Overview** (page ?).

Note: *The airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor collision, it is possible that only the knee airbag will deploy.*

SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS



E75004

The airbags are located over the front and rear side windows.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

The airbag will deploy during significant lateral collisions. It will also deploy during significant frontal angled collisions. The curtain airbag will not deploy in minor lateral and frontal collisions, rear collisions, or overturns.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 ft (10 m).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions (e.g. amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems). If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

REMOTE CONTROL

You can program a maximum of eight remote controls to your vehicle. This includes any that were supplied with your vehicle. See an authorized dealer.

Changing the Remote Control Battery



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority regarding recycling.

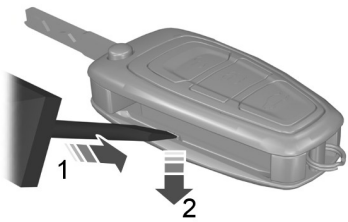
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

Note: *When you press the unlock button either all the doors are unlocked or only the passenger doors are unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.*

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators will flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

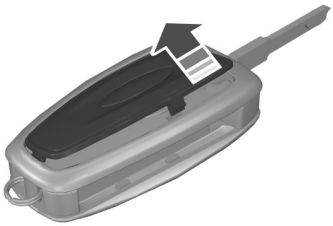
Type 1



E128809

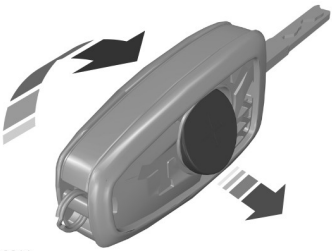
1. Insert a screwdriver in the position shown and gently push the clip.
2. Press the clip downward to release the battery cover.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First



E128810

3. Carefully remove the battery cover.

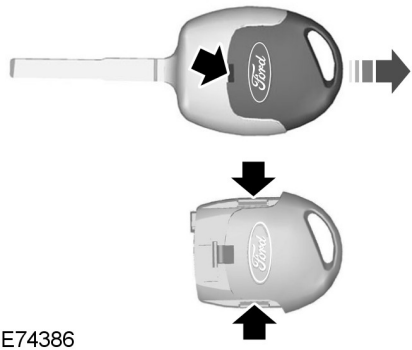


E128811

Note: *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

4. Turn the remote control over to remove the battery.
5. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the **+** facing upward.
6. Replace the battery cover.

Type 2



E74386

1. Insert a screwdriver into the recess on the back of the key and remove the key blade.
2. Release the retaining clips with the screwdriver and separate the two halves of the remote control.

Note: *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

3. Carefully prise out the battery with the screwdriver.
4. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the **+** facing upwards.
5. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
6. Install the key blade.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Remote Control** (page 36).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

Note: *Check your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *Do not leave your keys in your vehicle.*

Locking

Locking With the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Locking With the Remote Control



Press the button.

Note: *You can lock the driver door with the key. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.*

Double Locking (If Equipped)

WARNING

Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. You will not be able to unlock the doors from the inside if you have double locked them.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.

Note: *If you double lock your vehicle while inside, switch the ignition on to return the door locks to a single locked state.*

Double Locking With the Key

Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds.

Double Locking With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Unlocking

Unlocking With the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Unlocking With the Remote Control



Press the button.

Note: *You can unlock the driver door with the key. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.*

Note: *When you lock your vehicle for several weeks, the remote control will be switched off. Your vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once will enable the remote control.*

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can reprogram the unlocking function so that only the driver door is unlocked. See **Remote Control** (page 36).

Locking and Unlocking Confirmation

When you lock the doors, the direction indicators will flash twice.

When you unlock the doors, the direction indicators will flash once.

Note: *If your vehicle has double locking, the direction indicators will flash only when your vehicle has been double locked.*

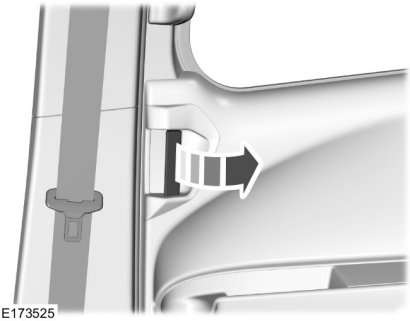
Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside



Press the button to lock and unlock all the doors. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 10). The lamp illuminates with the doors locked.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Opening the Sliding Door From Inside

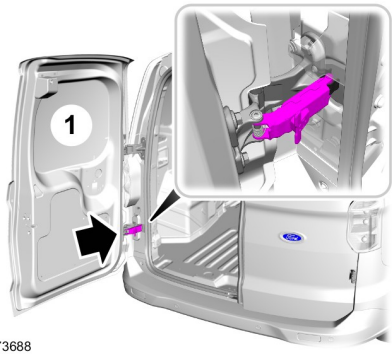


E173525

Opening the Double Rear Doors (If Equipped)

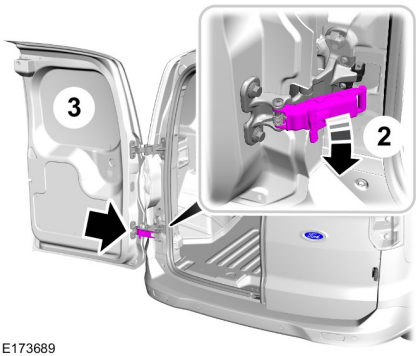


E180749



E173688

1. Open the rear cargo door.



E173689

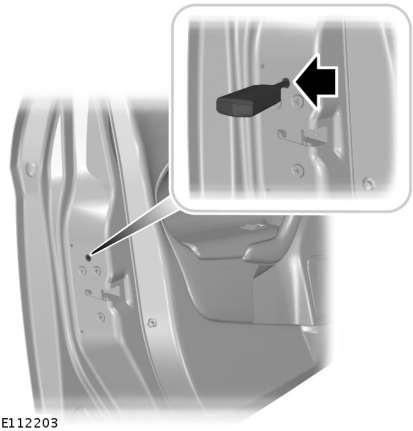
2. Pull the lever to release the catch.
3. Open the cargo door fully.

Opening the Manual Liftgate (If Equipped)

See **Manual Liftgate** (page 42).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Locking the Doors Individually With the Key



E112203

If the central locking does not function correctly, the doors can be individually locked using the key in the position shown.

Left-hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Right-hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Automatic Locking

See an authorized dealer.

Automatic Re-Locking

The doors will re-lock automatically if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm will return to their previous state.

One-Stage Unlocking

You can turn this function on using the remote control.

When you use this feature, you will unlock all doors including the rear doors or liftgate and the sliding door.

Note: *The direction indicators will flash once when you unlock the doors.*

You will unlock all of the doors when you:

- Pull the driver door interior handle (except if you have double locked the doors).
- Turn the key in the door lock to the unlock position.
- Press the unlock button on the remote control once.
- Press the interior unlock button once.

Note: *When you have double locked your vehicle, the interior unlock button will only work for a period of 20 seconds.*

Two-Stage Unlocking

Note: *The direction indicators will flash once when you unlock the doors.*

You will unlock the front doors when you:

- Pull the driver door interior handle (except if you have double locked the doors).
- Turn the key in the door lock to the unlock position.
- Press the unlock button on the remote control once.
- Press the interior unlock button once.

Note: *When you have double locked your vehicle, the interior unlock button will only work for a period of 20 seconds.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

You will unlock the front doors and cargo area when you:

- Turn the key in the door lock to the unlock position twice within three seconds.
- Press the unlock button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the interior unlock button twice within three seconds.

Configurable Unlocking

Configurable unlocking is set at the time of vehicle purchase. It allows you to select which doors unlock when you press the unlock button or the luggage compartment unlock button on your remote control once or twice. You cannot turn this feature back on if you have had it turned off. See an authorized dealer for further information.

MANUAL LIFTGATE

WARNINGS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of your vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a safety belt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

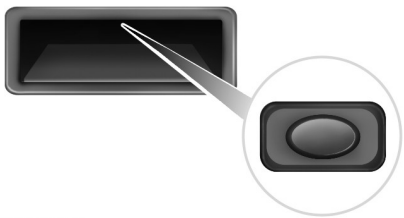
Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything (bike rack, etc.) from the spoiler, glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *If you leave the liftgate open when driving the tailgate components could be damaged.*

Opening and Closing the Liftgate

To Open the Liftgate



E138632

Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, then pull on the outside handle.

To Close the Liftgate



E148833

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *Do not leave correctly coded keys in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.*

Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

Note: *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognizing a coded key.*

Arming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition off the engine immobilizer will arm automatically after a short time.

Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition on the engine immobilizer will disarm automatically if a correctly coded key is used.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM

Alarm System

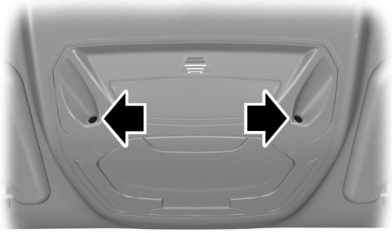
Your vehicle may have one of the following alarm systems:

- Category one alarm with interior sensors and battery back-up sounder.
- Perimeter alarm.

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors, luggage compartment and the hood.

Interior Sensors



E131656

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized intrusion by detecting any movement within your vehicle.

Note: *Do not cover the interior scanning sensors.*

Note: *If your vehicle has a mesh bulkhead or no bulkhead the sensors will scan the complete interior. If your vehicle has any other type of bulkhead the sensors will only scan the cabin area.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Battery Back-up Sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an additional alarm system that will sound a siren when the alarm is triggered. When you lock your vehicle the system is armed. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the navigation system or certain types of audio system.
- If you switch the ignition on without a valid key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flashers will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

Guard Settings

WARNING

Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle. This could trigger the alarm.

Level	Description
Full guard	The interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.
Reduced guard	The interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm. You can set the alarm to reduced guard for the current ignition cycle only. The alarm will reset to full guard the next time you switch the ignition on.
Ask on exit	You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set. A message appears in the information display each time you switch the ignition off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the **OK** button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the **OK** button.

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display.

Note: *Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current ignition cycle. If you regularly set the alarm to reduced guard, select the option to ask when you exit.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Locks** (page 39).

Disarming the Alarm

Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key within 12 seconds or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

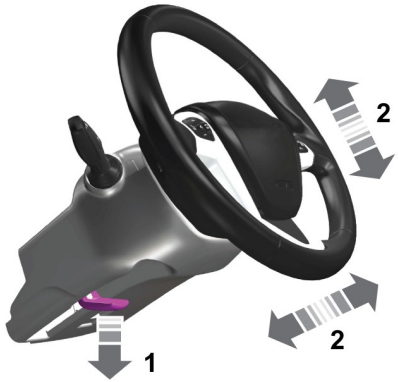
Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING

Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 81).*



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



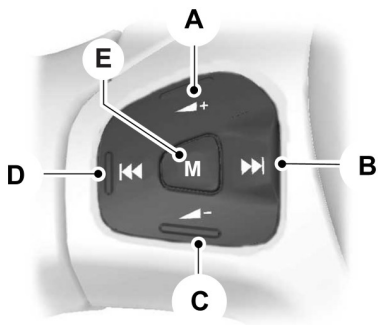
E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

You can operate the following functions with the control:



E177404

A Volume up
B Seek up or next
C Volume down

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

D Seek down or previous

E Mode

Press **M** to select the audio source.

Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- Play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- Seek through a track.

VOICE CONTROL



E141533

Press the button to select or deselect voice control. See **SYNC™** (page 208).

CRUISE CONTROL



E141961

See **Cruise Control** (page 112).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

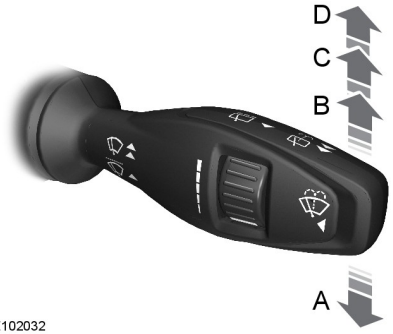
WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.*

Note: *Make sure the windshield wipers are switched off before entering a car wash.*

Note: *Install new wiper blades as soon as they begin to leave bands of water and smears on the windshield.*

Note: *Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.*

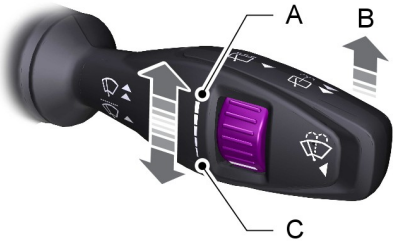


E102032

A Single wipe
B Intermittent wipe
C Normal wipe
D High speed wipe

Note: *If you press and hold the wiper lever in position A, the wipers will continue to wipe until you release the wiper lever.*

Intermittent Wipe



E102033

A Short wipe interval
B Intermittent wipe
C Long wipe interval

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Speed Dependent Wipers

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes will decrease.

AUTOWIPERS

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.*

Note: *Make sure the windshield wipers are switched off before entering a car wash.*

Note: *Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

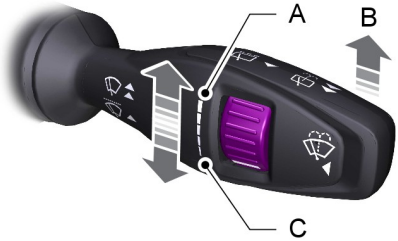
Note: *If you switch autolamps on in conjunction with autowipers, low beam headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windshield wipers continuously.*

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

In these conditions, you can do the following to help keep your windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers.
- Change the wiper speed to normal or high speed wipe as necessary.
- Switch the autowipers off.



E102033

A	Maximum autowipe
B	On
C	Minimum autowipe

The wipers will function when water is detected on the windshield. The rain sensor will continue to monitor the amount of water on the windshield and adjust the speed of the wipers automatically. This feature can be switched on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 64).

Note: *When you switch this feature off, the wipers will return to the variable intermittent setting based on the sensitivity you have set.*

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor. On minimum autowipe, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. On maximum autowipe, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. Sensor performance will be affected if the area around the interior mirror is dirty. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or flies hit the windshield.

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.*



E102051

Push the button to operate the washers. When you release the button, the wipers will operate for a short time.

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

Intermittent Wipe



E102052

Pull the lever toward you.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

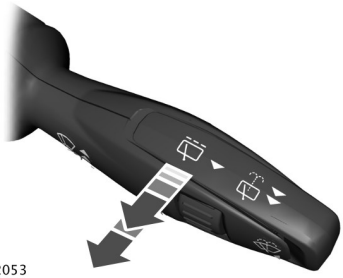
Reverse Gear Wipe

The rear wiper will turn on automatically when selecting reverse gear if:

- the rear wiper is not already switched on
- the wiper lever is in position A, B, C or D
- the front wiper is operating (when set to position B).

Rear Window Washer

Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.*



E102053

Pull the lever toward you to operate the washers. They will operate for a maximum of 10 seconds. When you release the lever, the wiper will operate for a short time.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in Lamp Assemblies

Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

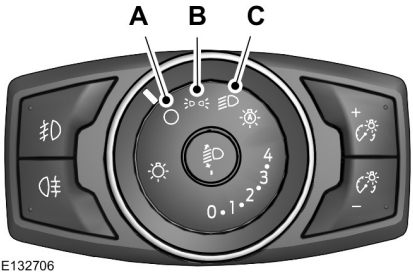
Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL

Lighting Control Positions



E132706

A	Off
B	Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps
C	Headlamps

Parking Lamps

Note: *Prolonged use of the parking lamps will cause the battery to run out of charge.*

Switch the ignition off.

Turn the lighting control to position B.

High Beams



E101829

Pull the lever fully toward you to switch the high beams on.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Push the lever forward to switch the high beams off.

Headlamp Flasher

Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS



E142451

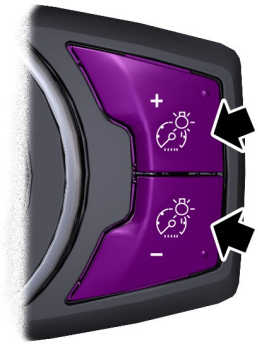
The headlamps will automatically turn on and off in low light situations or during inclement weather.

Note: *You may have to manually switch the headlamps on in severe weather conditions.*

Note: *If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the high beam headlamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.*

Note: *If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps will automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER



E132712

Press it repeatedly or press it and hold it until the desired level is reached.

Note: *If you disconnect the battery or it loses charge the instrument lighting will return to its brightest setting.*

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

WARNING

Always remember to switch your headlamps on in low light situations or during inclement weather. The system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

To switch the system on:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the lighting control to the off or autolamp position.

FRONT FOG LAMPS



E132709

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

Note: *Only use fog lamps during reduced visibility, for example, fog, snow or heavy rain.*

Note: *If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the fog lamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.*

REAR FOG LAMPS



E132710

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when either the front fog lamps or low beam headlamps are on.

Note: *Only use the rear fog lamps when visibility is less than 164 feet (50 meters).*

Note: *Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing.*

Note: *If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the fog lamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.*

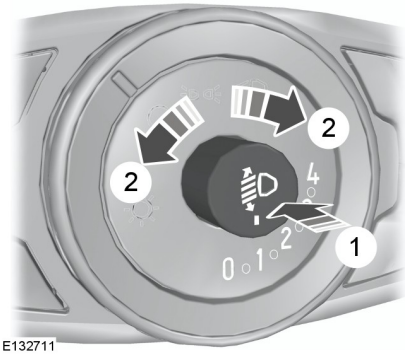
HEADLAMP LEVELING

Adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to your vehicle load.

Set the headlamp leveling control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded. Set the headlamp beams to give between 115 feet and 330 feet (35 meters and 100 meters) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams:

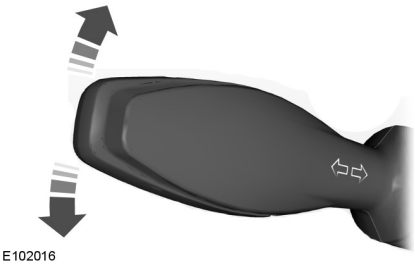
Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.



E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control to the required setting.
3. Press to close the control.

DIRECTION INDICATORS

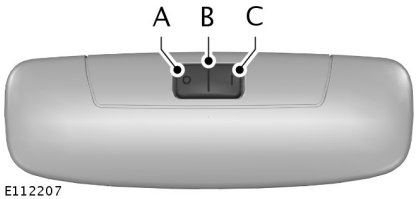

E102016

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Note: *Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.*

INTERIOR LAMPS

Courtesy Lamp



E112207

A	Off
B	Door contact
C	On

If you set the switch to position B, the courtesy lamp will switch on when you unlock your vehicle, open a door or the liftgate. If you leave a door open with the ignition switched off, the courtesy lamp will switch off automatically after a short period of time to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch it back on, switch the ignition on for a short period of time.

The courtesy lamp will also switch on when you switch the ignition off. It will switch off automatically after a short period of time or when you start the engine.

If you set the switch to position C with the ignition switched off, the courtesy lamp will switch on. It will switch off automatically after a short period of time to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch it back on, switch the ignition on for a short period of time.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Reading Lamps



E112208

If you switch the ignition off, the reading lamps will switch off automatically after a short period of time to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch them back on, switch the ignition on for a short period of time.

Luggage Compartment Lamp

The luggage compartment lamp will switch on and off automatically when you open and close the doors. If you unlock the doors with the remote control, they will switch on. They will switch off automatically after a short period of time.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

POWER WINDOWS

To reduce wind noise or buffeting when just one window is open, open the opposite window slightly.

Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

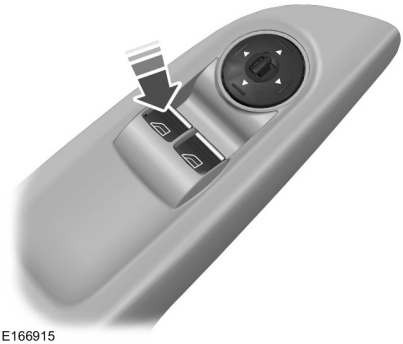
1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one more second.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
5. Release the switch.
6. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
7. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
8. Reset and repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

POWER WINDOWS

WARNINGS

Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E166915

Press to open the window.

Lift to close the window.

Note: *You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.*

One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Press fully and release. Press again or lift to stop the window.

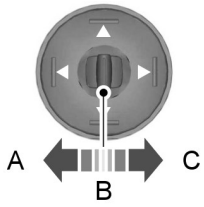
EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

WARNING

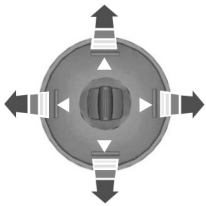
Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First



E70846

A Left-hand mirror
B Off
C Right-hand mirror



E70847

Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.

Note: *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.*

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING

Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.*

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

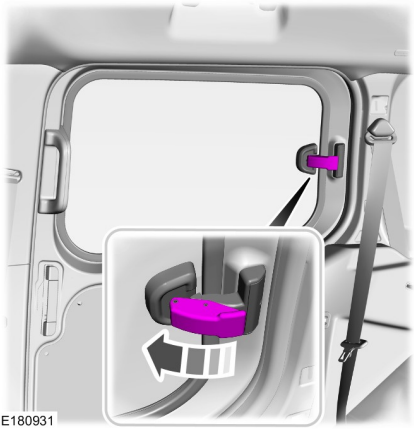
Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.*

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

SLIDING DOOR WINDOW (If Equipped)

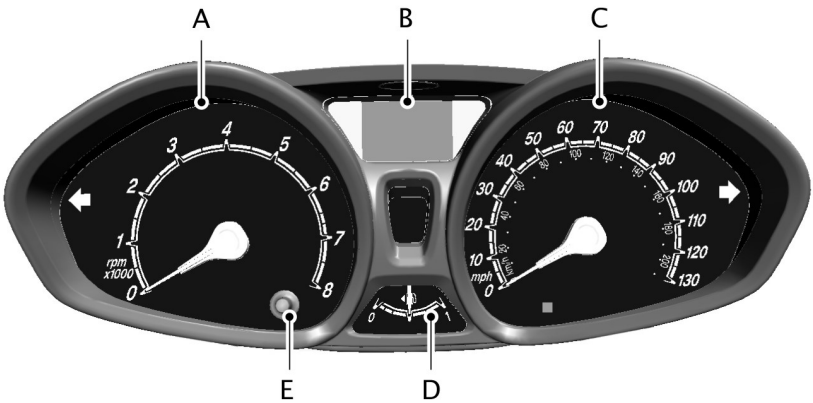


E180931

To open the window, pull the lever and then push-click it to lock the window in the open position. Reverse this procedure to close the window.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

GAUGES



E172883

A Tachometer
B Information display and engine coolant temperature gauge
C Speedometer
D Fuel gauge
E Tripmeter reset button

Information Display

Cruise Control and Speed Limiter

Displays the speed limiter or cruise control set speed (both features cannot work simultaneously).

Safety Belt Minder

Displays your vehicles rear safety belt buckle status.

Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 67).

Gear and Upshift Indicator

Displays your selected transmission gear and the upshift indicator.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



E173227

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant. At normal operating temperature the indicator will remain in the center section.

Fuel Gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators will alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp but do not display when you start your vehicle.*

Anti-lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without anti-lock braking system) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Anti-theft System

A red LED flashes when the Anti-theft System has been activated.

Battery



If it illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Brake System



It will illuminate when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

WARNING

Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Cruise Control



It will illuminate when you switch this feature on. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 112).

Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burnt out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 153).

Door Ajar



Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door, the hood or the liftgate is not closed properly.

Engine Coolant Temperature

WARNING



Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.



If it stays on after starting or illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 150).

Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp



Powertrain Warning Lamp

All Vehicles

If either lamp illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. The engine will continue to run but it may have limited power. If it flashes when you are driving, reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately. If it continues to flash, avoid heavy acceleration or deceleration. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

WARNING



Have this checked immediately.

If both lamps illuminate together, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so (continued use may cause reduced power and cause the engine to stop). Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. If the engine restarts have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. When the engine does not restart have your vehicle checked before continuing your journey.

Exhaust Filter (If Equipped)



Illuminates when the Diesel Particulate Filter is full. See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 93).

Front Airbag



If it fails to illuminate when you start your vehicle, continues to flash or remains on, it indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Front Fog Lamps



It will illuminate when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Frost Warning Lamp

WARNING

Even if the temperature rises to above 39ºF (4ºC) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It will illuminate when the outside air temperature is 39ºF (4ºC) or below.

Glow Plug



If it illuminates, wait until it extinguishes before starting.

Headlamp



It will illuminate when you switch the headlamp dipped beam or the side and tail lamps on.

High Beam



It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

Hill Descent (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you switch on hill descent.

Hill Start Assist (If Equipped)



Temporarily illuminates when your vehicle is on a slope, you release your brake pedal and the system becomes active.

Low Fuel Level



If it illuminates, refuel as soon as possible.

Low Oil Pressure

WARNING

Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 149).

Low Oil



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 149).

Low Tire Pressure



It will illuminate when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

It will also illuminate momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Oil Service

WARNING

Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.



Illuminates to indicate it is time to change the oil. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 149).

Power Steering



If it illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction of the power steering system. You will continue to have full steering but will need to exert greater force on the steering wheel. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Rear Fog Lamps



It will illuminate when you switch on the rear fog lamps.

Safety Belt Minder



It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. See **Safety Belt Minder** (page 31).

Shift Indicator





It will illuminate when you are recommended to shift up or down from the selected gear. It will not illuminate during periods of high acceleration, braking or when the clutch pedal is pressed.

Speed Limiter



It will illuminate when you switch on the speed limiter system. See **Speed Limiter** (page 114).

Stability Control



While driving, it flashes when the system is operating. After you switch the ignition on, if it does not illuminate or illuminates continuously while driving, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction, the system switches off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

Stability Control Off



If your vehicle has information display controls on your audio unit, it will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 107).

Start-Stop



It will illuminate when the engine has automatically stopped. It will flash to inform you when the engine needs to restart. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 96). See **Information Messages** (page 67).

Water-In-Fuel (If Equipped)



It will illuminate if there is excess water in the fuel filter. Drain off the water immediately. See **Fuel Quality** (page 99).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Auto-Start-Stop

Sounds when the driver door is open and Auto-Start-Stop is in run mode while the engine has stopped.

Headlamps On

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Safety Belt Minder

Sounds when a safety belt is unfastened in an occupied seat and your vehicle is moving.

Speed Limiter

Sounds when you have unintentionally exceed the set speed limit and the set speed limit displayed in the information display will flash.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *The information display will remain on for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.*

Device List

The icon changes to show the current function in use.


CD


Radio


Auxiliary input

Information Display Controls



E103626

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on your audio unit. The information display shows the corresponding information.

To use the controls:

- Press the up or down arrow button to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a submenu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a submenu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display.
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Menu Structure - Information Display

You can access the menu using the information display control.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages will display or be available.*

SYNC-Media allows you to access the SYNC® features.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

SYNC-Phone	
Dial number	
Redial	
Phone book	
Call lists	
BT device	

Menu		
Ford EcoMode		
SYNC settings	Bluetooth	
	System info	
	Voice	
SYNC applications		
Navigation	Route options	
	Map display	
	Assistance options	
	Personal data	
	Reset all settings	
Audio settings	Adaptive volume	
	Sound	
	Nav audio mixing	
	DSP settings	
	DSP equaliser	
	Traffic	
	News	
	Alt. frequency	
	RDS regional	

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Menu		
	DAB service link	
	Bluetooth	
Vehicle settings	Traction control	
	Tyre pressure sys	
	Hill start assist	
	Rain sensor	
	Indicator	
	Chimes	
Clock settings	Auto time (GPS)	
	Set time	
	Set date	
	Set time zone	
	Summer time	
	24-hour mode	
Display settings	Measure unit	
	Language	
	Dimming	

System Check

All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Press the up or down arrow button to scroll through the list.

CLOCK

Type 1

To adjust the clock, switch the ignition on and press buttons H or M on the information and entertainment display as necessary.

Type 2

Note: *Use the information display to adjust the clock. See* ***General Information*** *(page 64).*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

TRIP COMPUTER



E102759

Press the button to scroll through the displays.

Ø MPG You can reset the trip, average fuel consumption and average speed. Scroll to the required display, then press and hold the button, this will reset the trip computer.

The trip computer includes the following information displays:

Trip Odometer

MI TRIP Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys.

KM TRIP

Distance to Empty

MI TO 0 Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. The distance to empty displayed may vary depending on driving style and road conditions.

KM TO 0

Average Fuel Consumption

Ø MPG Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Ø L/100KM

Instantaneous Fuel Consumption

MPG Indicates the current fuel consumption.

L/100KM

Stationary Fuel Consumption

G/H Indicates the current fuel consumption while stationary.

L/H

Average Speed

Ø MPH Indicates the average speed calculated since the function was last reset.

ØKM/H

Distance Odometer

MI Registers the total distance your vehicle has traveled.

KM

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages will display or be available. The information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.



E103626

Press the **OK** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display.

The information display will automatically remove other messages after a short period of time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

The message indicator illuminates to supplement some messages. The indicator will be red or amber depending on the severity of the condition and it remains on until the condition is resolved.

A system-specific symbol with a message indicator may supplement some messages.

Airbag

Message	Description
Airbag malfunction Service now	The system requires service.

Alarm

Message	Description and Action
Alarm triggered Check vehicle	Indicates that there has been an activation of the anti-theft alarm. See **Anti-Theft Alarm** (page 43).
Interior Scan deactivated	Interior scan cancelled. See **Security** (page 43).
Alarm system malfunction Service required	The system requires service.

Doors and Locks

Message	Description
Driver door open	The door listed is not completely closed.
Driver side rear door open	The door listed is not completely closed.
Passenger door open	The door listed is not completely closed.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Message	Description
Passenger side rear door open	The door listed is not completely closed.
Boot open	The luggage compartment is not completely closed.
Bonnet open	The hood is not completely closed.

Engine

Message	Description
Engine preheating	See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page 92).

Engine Immobilizer

Message	Action
Immobiliser malfunction Service now	Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill start assist not available	The system requires service. See **Hill Start Assist** (page 106).

Lighting

Message	Description
Left Indicator malfunction Change bulb	The indicator listed is not working. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 153).
Right Indicator malfunction Change bulb	The indicator listed is not working. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 153).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Maintenance

Message	Description and Action
Brake fluid Level low Service now	The brake fluid level is low, inspected the brake system immediately. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 151).
Brake system malfunction Stop safely	The system requires service. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer.
Engine oil pressure low Stop safely	Stop your vehicle in a safe place and allow the engine to cool. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 149).
Engine Service now	The system requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Auto wiper/lights malfunction Service required	The system requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Engine oil change due Service required	The oil life left is at 0%. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 149).

Parking Brake

Message	Description
Park brake applied	The parking brake is still applied. See **Parking Brake** (page 105).

Stability Control

Message	Description and Action
Traction control off	The status of the system after you switch it off or on. See **Using Stability Control** (page 107).
Electronic stability control off	The status of the system after you switch it off or on. See **Using Stability Control** (page 107).
ABS malfunction Service now	The system requires service.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Message	Description and Action
	Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
ESP malfunction Next service	The system requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
ESP off	The status of the system switches it off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 107).

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Message	Description and Action
Auto StartStop Engine starting	The starter is attempting to start your vehicle. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 91).
Auto StartStop Manual start required	The system has cancelled the pending start. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 91).
Diesel filter overloaded See manual	The diesel filter is overloaded and a change is required. See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 93).
Press brake to start	A reminder to press the brake pedal when starting your vehicle. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 91).
Press clutch to start	A reminder to apply the clutch when starting your vehicle. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 91).
Press brake and clutch to start	A reminder to apply the brake and clutch when starting your vehicle. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 91).
Cranking time exceeded	The starter has exceeded its cranking time in attempting to start your vehicle. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 91).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Start-Stop

Message	Action
Auto StartStop Switch ignition off	Switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle if the system has shut down the engine. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 96).
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The engine needs to be restarted, press a pedal to start. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 96).
Auto StartStop Manual start required	The system is not functioning. A manual restart is required.
Auto StartStop Select neutral	Select neutral for the system to restart the engine. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 96).

Steering

Message	Action
Power steering malfunction Service now	The system requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Steering lock malfunction Stop safely	The system requires service. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer.
Steering lock malfunction Service now	Full steering will be maintained but you will need to exert greater force on the steering wheel. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Check tyre pressures	One or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Check as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sys malfunction Service required	The system requires service. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 166).
Tyre monitor malfunction Service required	The system requires service.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Message	Action
	If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 166).
Tyre sensors not detected Check manual	A tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 166). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Outside Air

Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

Recirculated Air

WARNING

Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. Outside air does not enter your vehicle.

Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

General Information on Controlling the Interior Climate

Fully close all the windows.

Warming the Interior

Direct the air toward your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air toward the windshield and the door windows.

Cooling the Interior

Direct the air toward your face.

Air Conditioning

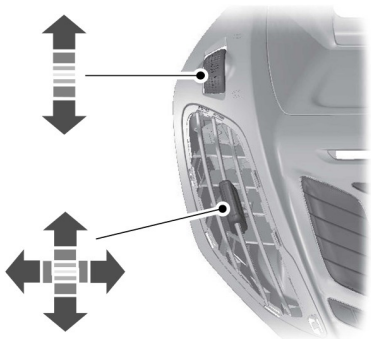
The system directs air through the evaporator for cooling. The evaporator extracts humidity from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The system directs the resulting condensation to the outside of your vehicle, which may cause a small pool to form under your vehicle. This is normal.

Note: *The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 39°F (4°C).*

Note: *When you use air conditioning, your vehicle uses more fuel.*

AIR VENTS

Center Air Vents



E142194

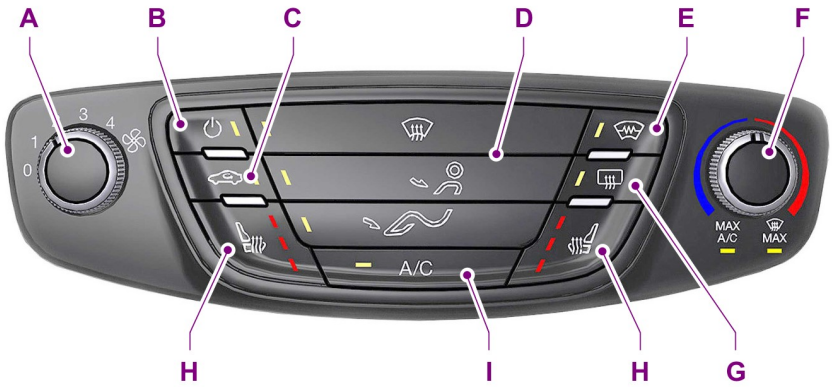
Side Air Vents



E71942

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL



E142257

A **Fan speed control:** Controls the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired fan speed or switch off. If you switch the fan off, the windshield may fog up.

B **On and off:** Press the button to turn the system on and off. When the system is off, outside air is prevented from entering your vehicle.

C **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the button illuminates and the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

D **Air distribution control:** Adjust to select the desired air distribution.

E **Heated windshield:** Press the button to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

F **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired temperature. If you select **MAX A/C**, the system distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel air vents. This mode is more economical and efficient than normal air conditioning.

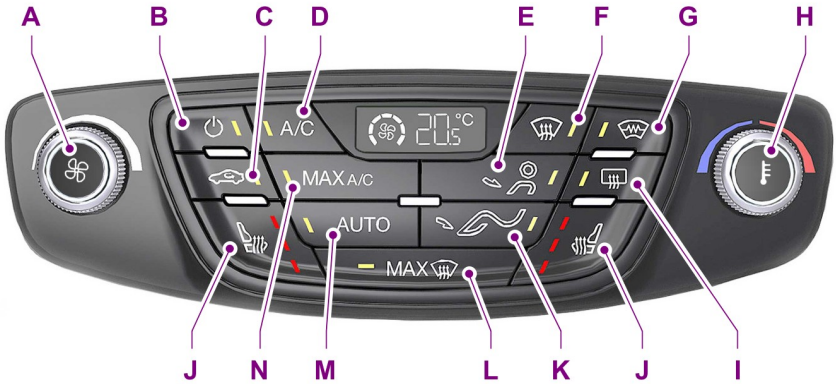
G **Heated rear window:** Press the button to defog and clear the rear window of a thin covering of ice.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

H **Heated front seats:** Press the button to turn the heated seats on. See **Heated Seats** (page 86).

I **Air conditioning:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows slightly open for two to three minutes.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



E142258

A **Fan speed:** Controls the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. Rotate the control to select the desired fan speed. The setting is shown in the display.

B **On and off button:** Press the button to switch the system on and off.

C **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

D **Air conditioning:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows slightly open for two to three minutes.

E **Instrument panel:** Press the button to distribute air through the instrument panel air vents.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

F **Windshield:** Press the button to distribute air through the windshield air vents. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

G **Heated windshield:** Press the button to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

H **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired temperature. If you select **MAX A/C**, the system distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel air vents. This mode is more economical and efficient than normal air conditioning.

I **Heated rear window:** Press the button to defog and clear the rear window of a thin covering of ice.

J **Heated front seats:** Press the button to turn the heated seats on. See **Heated Seats** (page 86).

K **Footwell:** Press the button to distribute air through the footwell air vents.

L **Windshield defrosting and defogging:** Press the button to distribute outside air through the windshield air vents. The heated windows and air conditioning will be automatically selected. The fan will be set to the highest speed and the temperature to high. When the air distribution is set in this position, you will be unable to select recirculated air or manually adjust the fan speed and temperature control. Press the **AUTO** button to return the system to auto mode.

M **AUTO:** Press the button to select automatic operation. The system automatically controls the temperature, amount and distribution of the airflow to reach and maintain your previously selected temperature.

N **MAX A/C:** Press the button to distribute maximum air conditioning through the instrument panel air vents. This mode is more economical and efficient than normal air conditioning.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Temperature Control



E142272

You can set the temperature between 61ºF (16ºC) and 82ºF (28ºC) in steps of 1ºF (0.5ºC). In position low, the system will switch to permanent cooling. In position high, the system will switch to permanent heating.

Note: *If you select either position low or high, the system will not regulate a stable temperature.*

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

Note: *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

Note: *A small amount of air may be felt from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

Note: *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

Note: *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

Note: *Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.*

Note: *To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position. Increase the temperature and fan speed and press the A/C button to improve clearing, if required.*

Heating the Interior Quickly

- Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.
- Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
- Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell air vents position.

Recommended Settings for Heating

- Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.
- Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
- Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell and windshield air vents position.

Cooling the Interior Quickly

- Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.
- Adjust the temperature control to the **MAX A/C** position.
- Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Recommended Settings for Cooling

- Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.
- Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
- Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.

Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures

- Apply the parking brake.
- Move the transmission selector lever to position **P** or neutral.
- Adjust the temperature control to the **MAX A/C** position.
- Adjust the fan speed to the lowest speed setting.

Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

- Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel and windshield air vents positions.
- Press the **A/C** button.
- Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
- Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.
- Direct the instrument panel side air vents toward the side windows.
- Close the instrument panel vents.

Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions

- Adjust the temperature control to the lowest setting.
- Press the **A/C** and recirculated air buttons.
- Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting initially and then adjust it to suit the desired comfort level.

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

Heated Windows

Use the heated windows to defrost or demist the windshield or rear window.

Note: *The heated windows operate only when the engine is running.*

Heated Windshield



Heated Rear Window



Heated Exterior Mirrors

Electric exterior mirrors have a heating element that will defrost or demist the mirror glass. They will switch on automatically when you switch the heated rear window on.

HEATED WINDSHIELD

Press the button to clear the heated windshield of thin ice and fog.

Note: *Make sure the engine is running before switching on the heated windshield.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.



HEATED REAR WINDOW

Press the button to clear the heated rear window of thin ice and fog.

Note: *Make sure the engine is running before switching on the heated rear window.*



HEATED EXTERIOR MIRRORS



The heated exterior mirrors will remove ice, mist and fog. They will switch on automatically when you switch the heated rear window on.

Note: *On vehicles without a heated rear window, the heated rear window button will turn on the heated mirrors.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

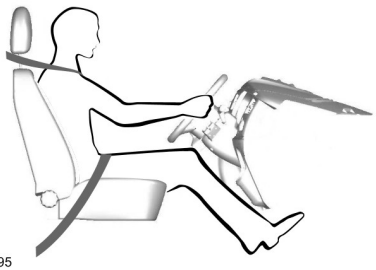
SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS

Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.

Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seat backrest reclined too far, can result in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat backrest, with your feet on the floor.

Do not place objects higher than the seat backrest to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 inches (25 centimeters) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNING

Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

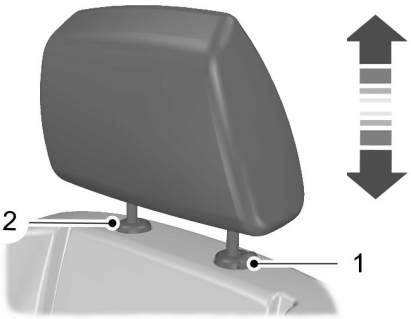
Adjusting the Head Restraints

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Removing the Head Restraints

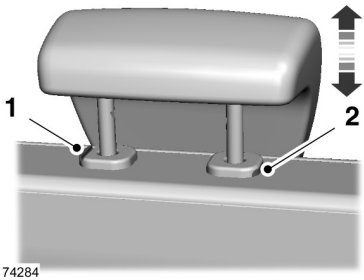
Front Head Restraint



E140447

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Using a suitable implement, release the retaining clip.

Rear Head Restraints



E174284

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Using a suitable implement release the retaining clip.

MANUAL SEATS

WARNINGS

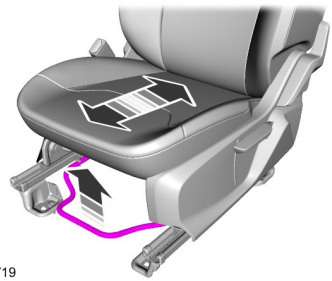
Do not adjust the driver seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seatback to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seatback to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

WARNING

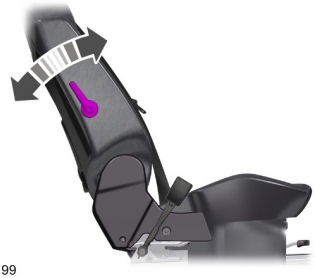
Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch. An unlatched seat can be dangerous in a crash and could result in serious personal injury or death.



E173719

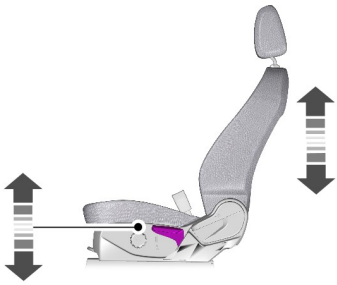
Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Adjusting the Lumbar Support



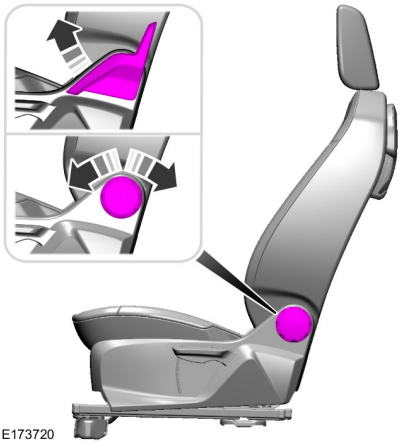
E142199

Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat



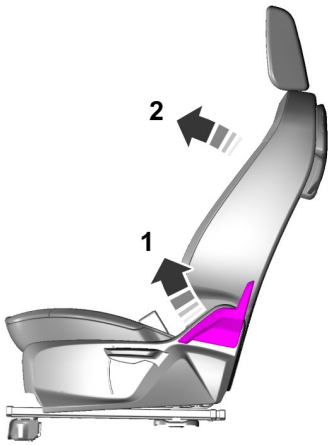
E70730

Recline Adjustment



E173720

Easy Entry Seat



E173722

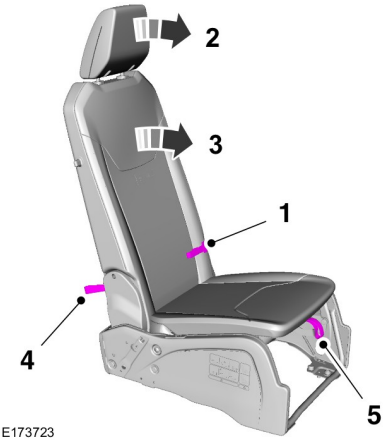
1. Rotate the lever.
2. Slide the seat forward.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Front Passenger Folding Seat (If Equipped)

WARNING

When folding the seatback down, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



E173723

To fold the seatback down:

1. Pull the strap on the rear seatback.
2. Fold the headrest forward.
3. Fold the seatback forward.

Note: *Make sure there are no objects underneath the seat before folding the seat. Failure to remove all objects may cause damage to the seat.*

4. To return the seatback to the upright position, pull the strap to release the rear seatback. Then, lift the seatback up.
5. Lift and lock the seat cushion.

Note: *There are two indicators on both sides of the seat. When red is visible on the indicator, the seat cushion latches are not engaged properly and you should not sit on the seat.*

REAR SEATS

WARNINGS

Do not use the bench seats as a bed when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

When folding the seatback down, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Do not place objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.


E175593

WARNING

In some markets, a four-seat vehicle is available. In these vehicles, the center rear position has a raised cushion, does not have a seat belt and is not a designated seating position. Do not let passengers sit there.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

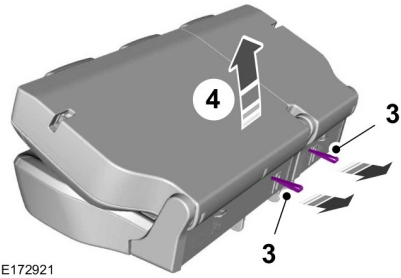
Folding the Seat Forward

Note: *Fully lower the head restraint when folding the seats. See* ***Head Restraints*** *(page 81).*



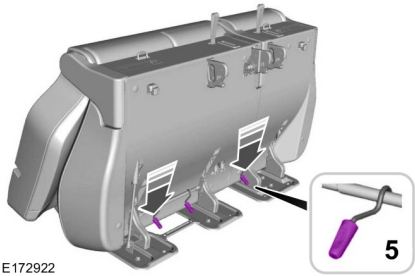
E172920

1. Press the button to release the seatback.
2. Fold the seatback down.



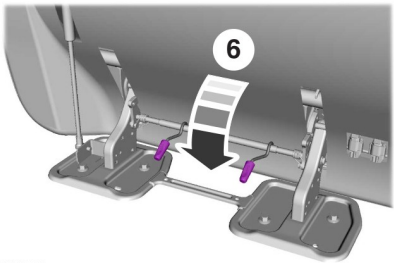
E172921

3. Pull the strap on the rear of the seatback.
4. Raise the seat to the vertical position.



E172922

5. To return the seat to the floor, press the lever(s).



E174036

6. Rotate the seat down until it latches to the floor.
7. To return the seatback to the upright position, lift the seatback toward the rear of the vehicle until it locks.

Note: *Rear row occupants can sit next to a seat in the same row that has the seatback in the folded position.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

HEATED SEATS

WARNING

People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so could drain your vehicle battery.

For item location: See **Climate Control** (page 74).

The heated seat will only operate with the ignition switched on.

The maximum temperature is reached after five or six minutes. It is regulated thermostatically.

The heated seat will remain on until either the heated seat switch or the ignition is switched off.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNING

Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 20 amps.*

After you switch the ignition off the power supply will only work for a maximum of 30 minutes.

Note: *Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the outlet and blow the fuse.*

Note: *Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.*

Note: *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watt or a fuse may blow.*

Note: *Do not use the power point for operating a cigar lighter element.*

Note: *Incorrect use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.*

Note: *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

Run the engine for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when your vehicle is parked for extended periods.

Location

Power points may be found:

- on the center console
- on the rear of the center console.

CIGAR LIGHTER

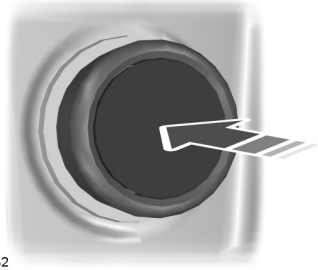
Note: *Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.*

Note: *If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may lose charge.*

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 20 amps.*

Note: *After you switch the ignition off the power supply will only work for a maximum of 30 minutes.*

Note: *Use only Ford accessory connectors or connectors specified for use with SAE standard sockets.*



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It will pop out automatically.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

CUP HOLDERS

WARNINGS

Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when your vehicle is moving.

Make sure that cups placed in the holders do not obstruct your vision while driving.

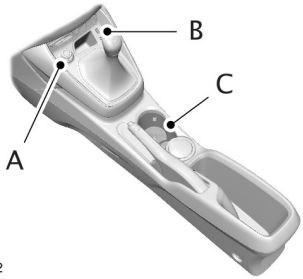
CENTER CONSOLE

WARNING

Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or collisions, including hot drinks which may spill.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a variety of features:



E172782

A Auxiliary power point

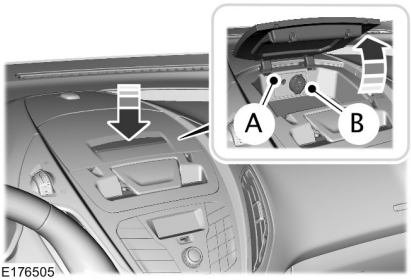
B Auxiliary audio input jack and USB port

C Cupholder

Center Instrument Panel Storage

(If Equipped)

Press the lid of the storage compartment to open or close. Use the slots, located on the front outer edges of the compartment, to help organise the cables after connecting a device.



E176505

A Auxiliary audio input jack

B USB port

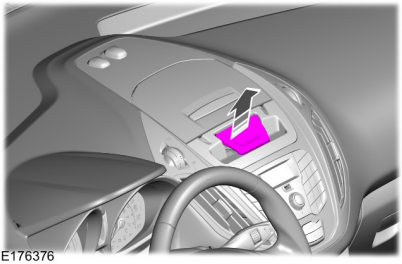
Note: *The USB port is for charging devices only.*

Device Dock (If Equipped)

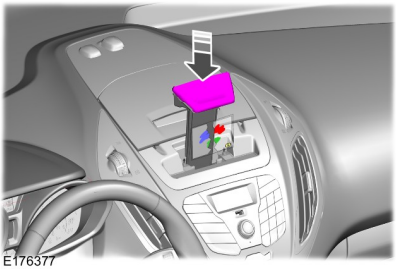
WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First


E176376

1. Lift the dock arm of the device dock.
2. Place the device on the mounting base.


E176377

3. Release the dock arm to drop it and hold the device.

Note: *Do not leave devices in the device dock when leaving your vehicle.*

Driver Instrument Panel Storage (If Equipped)

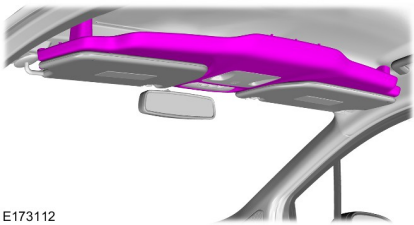
Pull up on the lever to release the latch, and then pull toward you to open. Press to close.


E176506

OVERHEAD CONSOLE

WARNING

Do not place heavy objects in the storage compartment. Heavy objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.


E173112

You can use the overhead storage for lighter items, including safety jackets and coats.

FOLDING TRAY

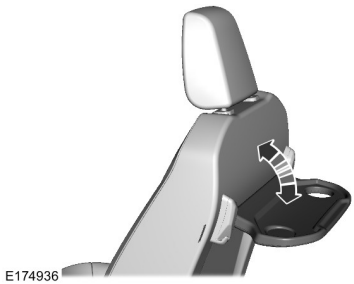
WARNINGS

Do not use the trays when your vehicle is moving. Make sure that you secure the trays in the upright position before setting off.

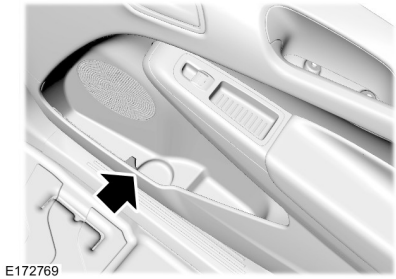
Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

WARNINGS

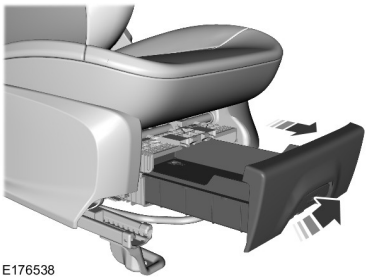
The maximum load capacity of the tray is 6.6 lb (3 kg)


E174936

BOTTLE HOLDER


E172769

UNDER SEAT STORAGE


E176538

To open, hold the storage box handle and press to release the latch. Pull forward. Push to close.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

IGNITION SWITCH



E72128

0(off) - The ignition is off.

Note: *When you switch the ignition off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.*

I (accessory) - Allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.

Note: *Do not leave the ignition key in position **I** or **II** (without the engine running) for too long to avoid vehicle battery losing charge.*

II (on) - All electrical circuits operational. Warning lamps and indicators are illuminated.

III (start) - cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

STEERING WHEEL LOCK

WARNING

Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

To lock the steering wheel:

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
2. Rotate the steering wheel slightly to engage the lock.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

To unlock the steering wheel:

1. Insert the key in the ignition switch.
2. Turn the key to position **I**.

Note: *You may need to rotate the steering wheel slightly to assist unlocking if there is a steering wheel load applied.*

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

Cold or Hot Engine

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, wait for a short period and try again.

If the engine does not start after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow the flooded engine procedure.

If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below -13ºF (-25ºC), press the accelerator pedal to the mid-way point of its travel and try again.

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.*

Note: *You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time, for example 10 seconds. The number of start attempts is limited to approximately six. If you exceed this limit, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.*

Flooded Engine

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

If the engine does not start, repeat the cold or hot engine procedure.

Engine Idle Speed after Starting

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

The idle speed will vary depending on certain factors. These include vehicle component and ambient temperatures as well as electrical and climate system demands.

Failure to Start

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the ignition key is turned to position **III**.

1. Fully depress the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

Cold or Hot Engine



1. Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.
2. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
3. Start the engine.

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.*

Note: *When the temperature is below 5ºF (-15ºC), you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Note: *You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time.*

Note: *After a limited number of attempts to start your engine, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.*

Failure to Start

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the ignition key is turned to position **III**.

1. Fully depress the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The filter forms part of the emissions reduction system on your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

Regeneration

WARNING

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Note: *Avoid running out of fuel.*

Note: *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.*

Note: *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

Note: *After you have switched your engine off the fans may continue to run for a short period of time.*

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function. Your vehicle will carry out this process automatically.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Vehicles With a Turbocharger

WARNING

Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

WARNINGS

Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.

Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

Note: *The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0ºF (-18ºC).*

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120-volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

AUTO-START-STOP

Note: *For vehicles with auto-start-stop, the battery requirement is different. It must be replaced by one of exactly the same specification as the original.*

The system reduces fuel consumption and CO2 emissions by shutting down the engine when your vehicle is idling, for example at traffic lights. The engine will automatically restart when you press the clutch pedal or when required by a vehicle system, for example to recharge the battery.

To obtain maximum benefit from the system, move the transmission lever to neutral and release the clutch pedal during any stop of longer than three seconds.

Using Auto-Start-Stop

WARNINGS

The engine may restart automatically if required by the system.

Switch the ignition off before opening the hood or carrying out any maintenance.

Always switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle, as the system may have shut down the engine but the ignition will still be live.

Note: *The system only operates when the engine is warm and the outside temperature is within the operating temperature limits of the system.*

Note: *If you stall the engine, and then press the clutch pedal within a short period of time, the system will automatically restart the engine.*

Note: *The auto-start-stop indicator will illuminate green when the engine shuts down. See* ***Warning Lamps and Indicators*** *(page 59).*



Note: *When the auto-start-stop indicator flashes amber, shift into neutral or press the clutch pedal.*

Note: *If the system detects a malfunction, it will switch off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *When you switch the system off, the switch will illuminate.*

Note: *The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on. To switch the system off, press the switch in the instrument panel. The system will only be switched off for the current ignition cycle. To turn it on, press the switch again. For item location: See* ***Instrument Panel Overview*** *(page ?).*

To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal.
4. Release the accelerator pedal.

The system may not shut down the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- To maintain the interior climate.
- Low battery voltage.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The driver door has been opened.
- Low engine operating temperature.
- Low brake system vacuum.
- If a road speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) has not been exceeded.
- The driver safety belt has not been fastened.

To Re-Start the Engine

Note: *The transmission must be in neutral.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Press the clutch pedal.

The system may automatically restart the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- Low battery voltage.
- To maintain the interior climate.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel capless fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

WARNINGS

Do not mix gasoline with oil, diesel or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.

Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

Note: *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.*

Note: *We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.*

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from an authorized dealer.

FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

WARNINGS

Do not mix diesel with oil, gasoline or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.

Do not add kerosene, paraffin or gasoline to diesel. This could cause damage to the fuel system.

WARNINGS

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.

Note: *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.*

Note: *We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.*

Note: *We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.*

Long-Term Storage

Most diesel fuels contain biodiesel. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain biodiesel if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from your dealer.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel, this can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

If your vehicle has run out of fuel:

- Normally, adding five liters of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If your vehicle is on a steep grade, more fuel may be required.
- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling.
- Do not fill a fuel container while it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

WARNINGS

Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel system filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

Do not prise or push open a capless fuel system. This may damage the fuel system or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the plastic funnel included with your vehicle.

Note: *The specifically designed plastic funnel included with your vehicle will work safely with the fuel system.*


E156223

1. The plastic funnel is located in the glove box.
2. Open the fuel filler door fully until it engages and remove the fuel filler cap.

Note: *Capless fuel systems do not have a fuel filler cap.*

3. Insert the plastic funnel into the filler neck.
4. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
5. Remove the plastic funnel from the filler neck.
6. Replace the fuel filler cap and close the fuel filler door.
7. Clean the plastic funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it. Extra plastic funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of it.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

WARNING

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Driving with a Catalytic Converter

WARNINGS

Avoid running out of fuel.

Do not crank the engine for long periods.

Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.

Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 130).

Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

REFUELING

WARNINGS

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This could damage the engine. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNINGS

If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the fuel filler flap briefly from a distance not less than 8 in (200 mm).

Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

Stop refueling after the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the second time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

Note: *Capless fuel systems do not have a fuel tank filler cap.*

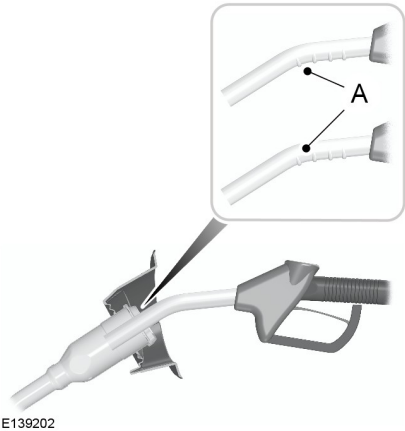
Note: *It is not possible to fully open the sliding door when the fuel filler flap is open.*



E180747

1. Pull the flap to open it. Open the flap fully until it engages.

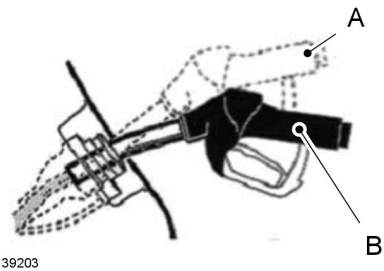
Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.



E139202

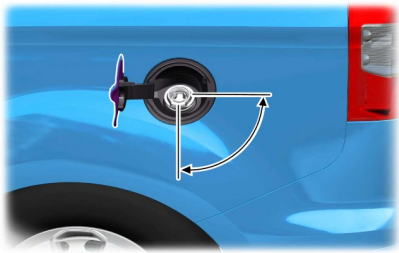
Note: *When you insert the correct size fuel nozzle, a spring loaded inhibitor will open. This helps to avoid filling up with the incorrect fuel.*

2. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



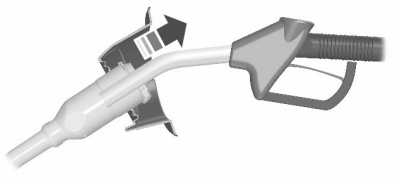
E139203

3. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



E180748

4. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



E119081

5. Slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place an approved fuel container on the ground.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

FUEL CONSUMPTION

We derive CO2 and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 and subsequent amendments.

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle.

Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, the accessories fitted, payload and towing.

The advertised capacity is the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in the fuel tank and when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the amount of fuel in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity due to the empty reserve still present in the fuel tank.*

Filling the Fuel Tank

For consistent results when refueling:

- Switch the ignition off.
- Allow no more than two automatic shut-offs when refueling.

Results are most accurate when the refueling method is consistent.

Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1000 mi (1,600 km) of driving (this is the engine break-in period). A more accurate measurement is obtained after 2500 mi (4,000 km). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the fuel tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Calculate fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons used (For Metric: Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled).

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or freeway). This provides an accurate estimate of your vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, your vehicle will use more fuel in cold temperatures.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Selecting Reverse Gear

Do not engage reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear. See* ***Cleaning the Alloy Wheels*** *(page 160).*

Note: *Depending upon certain laws and regulations, the brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this your hazard warning flashers may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control and vehicle stability during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

Note: *When the system is operating, the brake pedal will pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

PARKING BRAKE

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

Note: *Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.*

To apply the parking brake:

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNINGS

The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake. Failure to leave your vehicle securely parked may lead to a crash or injury. See **Parking Brake** (page 105).

You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent or if you rev the engine excessively. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system will activate automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for about two to three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.

Switching the System On and Off

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 64).

The system will remain on or off depending on how it was last set.

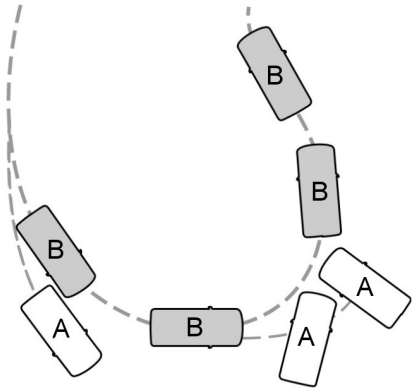
Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Electronic Stability Program

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.



E72903

A Without ESP
B With ESP

The system supports stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. The system performs this by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque as required.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This improves your ability to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.

Stability Control Warning Lamp

While driving, it flashes when the system is operating. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 59).

USING STABILITY CONTROL

Note: *The system automatically switches on every time you switch the ignition on.*

You can switch the system on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 64).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

If your vehicles has a non-Ford approved trailer tow module the system may not correctly detect objects.

The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.

The system does not detect objects that are moving away from your vehicle. They will only be detected shortly after they start to move toward your vehicle.

Take particular care when reversing with a tow ball arm or a rear fitted accessory. For example, a bicycle carrier. The rear parking aid will only indicate the approximate distance from the rear bumper to an object.

If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than eight inches (20 centimeters).

Note: *If your vehicle has a tow ball arm, the system is turned off automatically when trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket through a Ford approved trailer tow module.*

Note: *Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice or snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.*

Note: *The system may emit false alerts if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if your vehicle is fully loaded.*

Note: *The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensors and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the alert will turn off. As you continue the inner sensors will detect objects directly behind your vehicle.*

PARKING AID

WARNINGS

The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. Take care when using the system to avoid personal injury.

The parking aid system may not prevent contact with small or moving objects that are close to the ground. The parking aid system gives an audible warning when it detects a large object helping to avoid damage to your vehicle. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system.This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

Rear Sensing System

When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume. When the warning ends, the audio system returns to the previously set volume.

Note: *Accessories that block the detection zone of the system may create false alerts.*

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are blocked system accuracy may be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

The system warns you of objects that are within the detection zone of the bumper areas. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on. The system becomes active when you shift into reverse (R) and the speed of your vehicle is 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.



E130178

A Rear detection zone: Up to 183 cm (72 in) from the rear bumper.

The system detects objects when you move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R) and:

- Your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less, and an object is approaching your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.

REAR VIEW CAMERA

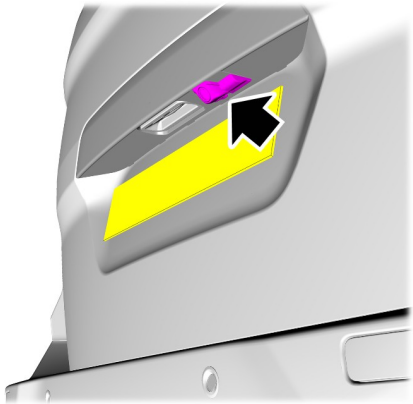
WARNINGS

Objects in the display are closer than they appear.

The operation of the camera may vary depending on the ambient temperature, vehicle and road conditions.

Do not place objects in front of the camera.

The camera may not detect objects that are very close to your vehicle.



E174474

The camera is on the luggage compartment lid or liftgate.

Switching the Rear View Camera On

Switch the ignition on and shift into reverse (R).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

The camera may not operate correctly in any of the following conditions:

- Dark areas.
- Intense light areas.
- If there is a sudden change to the ambient temperature.
- If the camera is wet.
- If the camera is dirty.
- If the camera is obstructed.

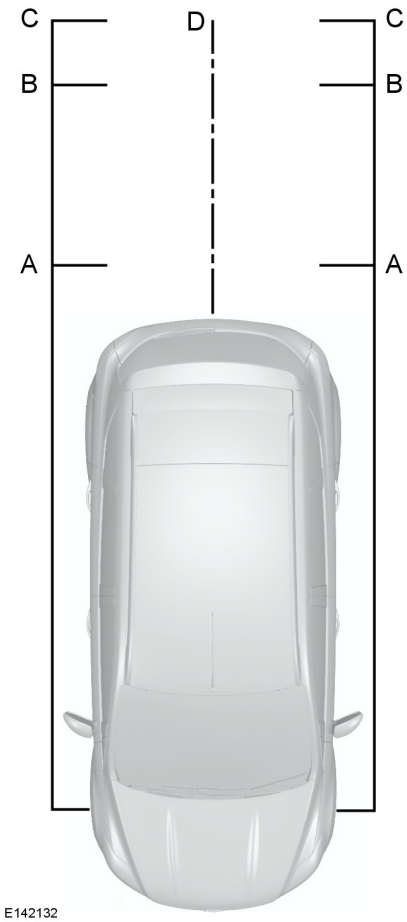
Using the Display

WARNING

Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

The lines show a projected vehicle path and the approximate distance from the rear bumper to an object.

Distance markers are only a guide and are calculated for unloaded vehicles on an even road surface.



A Red - up to 12 inches (0.3 meter).

B Amber - 12 inches to 24 inches (0.3 meter to 0.6 meter).

C Green - 24 inches to 35 inches (0.6 meter to 0.9 meter).

D Black - center line of the projected vehicle path.

Note: *The green line is extended from 35 in (0.9 m) up to a distance of 126 in (3.2 m).*

Note: *When reversing with a trailer the camera will show the direction of your vehicle and not the direction of the trailer.*

Note: *When reversing with a trailer the screen does not display the lines.*

Switching the Rear View Camera Off

Shift out of reverse (R).

Note: *The system will turn off after a short period of time.*

Vehicles with Parking Aid

The display will show a colored distance bar. This indicates the approximate distance from the rear bumper to an object.

These are color coded as follows:

- Red - up to 12 in (0.3 m).
- Amber - 12 in (0.3 m) to 24 in (0.6 m).
- Green - 24 in (0.6 m) to 71 in (1.8 m).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or, when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

When driving downhill your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes, change down a gear to assist the system in maintaining the set speed. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



E102679



E172733

Switching Cruise Control On and Off

Press and release **ON** (speedometer icon on vehicles with speed limiter) to switch the system on. Press and release **OFF** (speedometer icon on vehicles with speed limiter) to switch the system off.

Note: *You will erase the cruise speed if you switch the system off.*

Note: *To return to cruise control mode while in speed limiter mode, press and release the speedometer icon button.*

Note: *For speed limiter switch operation. See* ***Speed Limiter*** *(page 114).*

Setting the Cruise Speed



The indicator will display in the instrument cluster.

1. Adjust your vehicle speed to the desired cruise speed.
2. Press and release **SET+**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: *When driving uphill, cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed falls more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set cruise speed.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Changing the Cruise Speed

You can change the cruise speed using one of the following:

1. Adjust your vehicle speed to the desired cruise speed. Press and release **SET+**.
2. Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-** until your vehicle reaches the desired cruise speed.
3. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-** to change the cruise speed in approximately 2 kph (1 mph) increments until your vehicle reaches the desired cruise speed.

Canceling the Cruise Speed

Press and release **CAN** to place the system in standby mode.

Note: *If you press the brake pedal when driving under cruise control, you will place the system in standby mode.*

Resuming the Cruise Speed

Press and release **RES**. Your vehicle speed will return to the previously set cruise speed.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

SPEED LIMITER

WARNING

When driving downhill your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed limit. The system will not apply the brakes, you will hear an audible tone and the set speed limit displayed in the information display will flash.

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed limit will become the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed limit if required, for example to overtake.

Using Speed Limiter



E172600

Switching Speed Limiter On and Off

Press and release **LIM** to switch the system on. The information display will prompt you to set a speed limit. Press and release **LIM** to switch the system off.

Note: *To return to speed limiter mode while in cruise control mode, press and release **LIM**.*

Note: *For cruise control switch operation. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 112).*

Setting the Speed Limiter

When prompted press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. The speed is stored as a set speed and displayed in the information display.

Canceling the Speed Limiter

Press and release **CAN** to place the system in standby mode. The information display will confirm the system is in standby mode by displaying the set speed limit as crossed out in the information display.

Resuming the Speed Limiter

Press and release **RES**. The information display will confirm the system is no longer in standby mode by displaying the set speed limit in the information display.

Intentionally Exceed the Speed Limiter Set Speed

Fully press and release the accelerator pedal to place the speed limiter in standby mode. Use the accelerator pedal normally to intentionally exceed the set speed limit. The speed limiter set speed will resume when your vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit.

Note: *If you intentionally exceed the set speed limit, the set speed limit displayed in the information display will flash.*

Unintentionally Exceed the Speed Limiter Set Speed

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed limit, you will hear an audible tone and the set speed limit displayed in the information display will flash.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

ECO MODE

This system assists you in driving more efficiently by constantly monitoring characteristics of gear changing, anticipation of traffic conditions and speeds while driving.

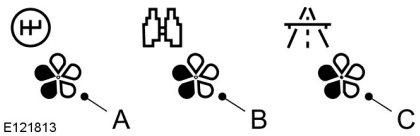
The petals shown in the display represent value characteristics with five petals being the most efficient. The more efficiently you drive, the better the rating, and the better your overall fuel economy.

Note: *These efficiency values do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. It might vary as it is not only related to these driving habits, but also influenced by many other factors such as short trips and cold starts.*

Note: *Frequent short trips, where the engine does not fully warm up, will also increase fuel consumption.*

You can access the system using the information display. See **General Information** (page 64).

Type 1



A Gear shifting
B Anticipation
C Efficient speed

Gear shifting

Using the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions will improve fuel consumption.

Anticipation

Adjust your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles to avoid the need for heavy braking or acceleration to improve fuel economy.

Efficient speed

Reduce your cruising speed on open roads to improve economy. Higher speeds use more fuel.

Type 2 and 3

The information display will show the corresponding information.

Resetting Eco Mode

Reset the average fuel consumption by using the information display control.

Note: *New values may take a short time to calculate.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.

Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.

Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.

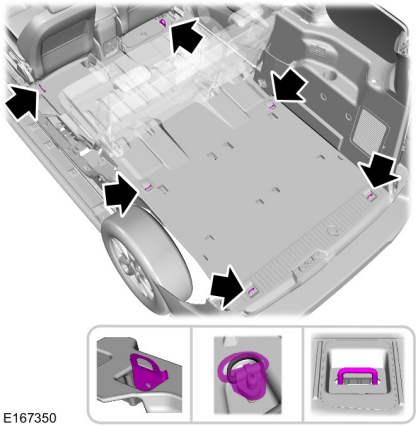
Do not drive with the liftgate or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter your vehicle.

Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 178).

Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.

Note: *When loading long objects in to your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.*

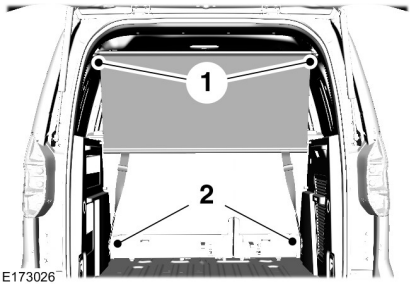
LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS (If Equipped)


E167350

CARGO NETS (If Equipped)

Installing and Removing the Cargo Net

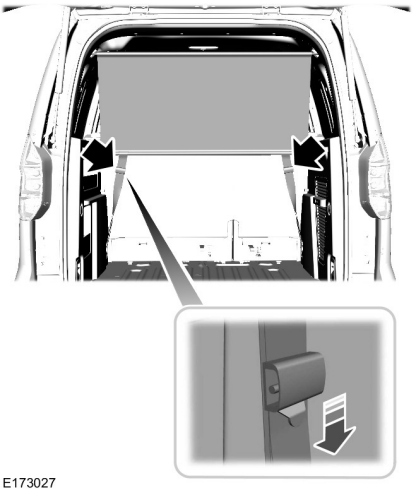
Installing the Cargo Net



E173026

1. Push the ends of the upper bar toward each other and insert them into the retainers near the roof. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.

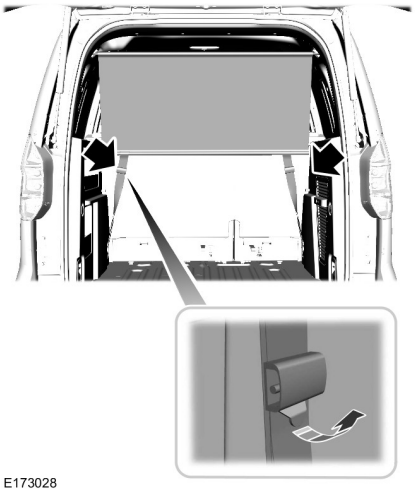
2. Attach the net to the luggage anchor points.



E173027

3. Tighten the straps.

Removing the Cargo Net



E173028

1. Release the straps.
2. Remove the net from the luggage anchor points.
3. Remove the upper bars.

LUGGAGE COVERS (If Equipped)

WARNING

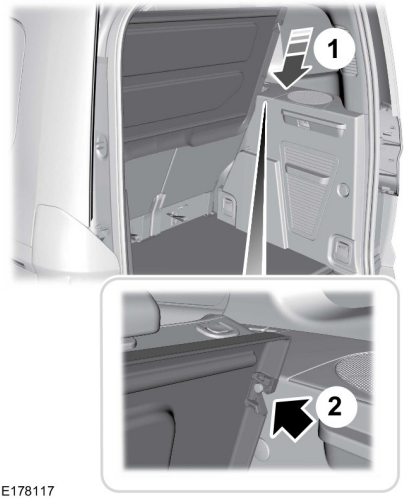
Do not place objects on the luggage cover.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Removing the Cover



E178116



E178117

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

WARNINGS

When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Do not exceed the maximum roof load for your vehicle.

Do not exceed the maximum axle load for your vehicle. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 178).

Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.

For correct roof rack system function, you must place loads directly on crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails.

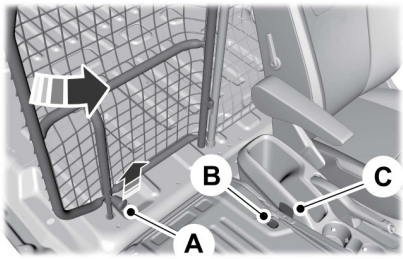
Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel.*

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check to make sure the straps are secure before driving and at each fuel stop.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Maximum Roof Load (Including Roof Rack) lb (kg)	
Transit	132 (60)
Tourneo	99 (45)

FOLDING BULKHEAD



E177409

A Fully open.
B Partially closed.
C Fully closed.

Folding the Bulkhead

Fold the passenger seat to its full forward flat position.

Adjusting the Bulkhead

Pull up on the release pin (A) and fold the bulkhead toward the center console. You can secure the bulkhead partially closed by dropping the pin into the slot on the seat (B). You can fully close the bulkhead by pulling it to the center console (C).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNINGS

Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h). This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

The rear tire pressures must be increased by 3 psi (0.2 bar) above specification. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the tire sidewall. This could cause serious personal injury. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 161).

Do not exceed the maximum gross train weight stated on your vehicle identification plate. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 178).

Do not exceed the maximum permissible trailer nose weight (vertical weight on the tow ball) as stated in the vehicle specification chart. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 175).

The anti-lock braking system does not control the overrun brake on the trailer. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, the load in your trailer should be placed toward the nose, within the maximum nose load, as this gives the best stability. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 175).
- The trailer nose weight (vertical weight on the tow ball), is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.
- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissable weight. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 175).
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 121).
- Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer nose weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer nose weight may be lower.*

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 3281 feet (1000 meters) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 3281feet (1000 metres), the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight must be reduced by 10% for every extra 3281 feet (1000 metres).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have tow bars fitted. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

Trailer Lighting

The electrical system on your vehicle is not suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control warning lamp flashes and a message appears in the information display. The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 175). See **Load Carrying** (page 116).

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.*

TOW BALL

WARNINGS

When not in use, always transport the tow ball arm securely fastened in the luggage compartment.

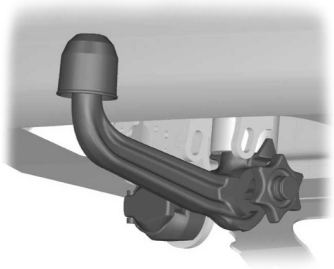
WARNINGS

Take special care when fitting the tow ball arm as the safety of your vehicle and the trailer depends on this.

Do not use any tools for mounting or dismounting the tow ball arm.

Do not modify the trailer coupling.

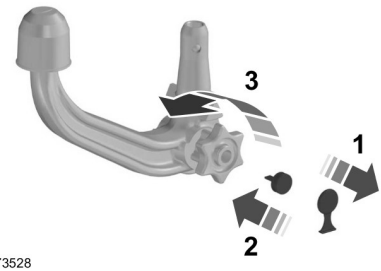
Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.



E71328

A 13-pin trailer socket and the tow ball arm seat are provided under the rear bumper. Turn the trailer socket down through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.

Unlocking the Tow Ball Arm Mechanism



E173528

1. Remove the protecting cap.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

2. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to unlock.
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel out and turn it counterclockwise until it clicks.

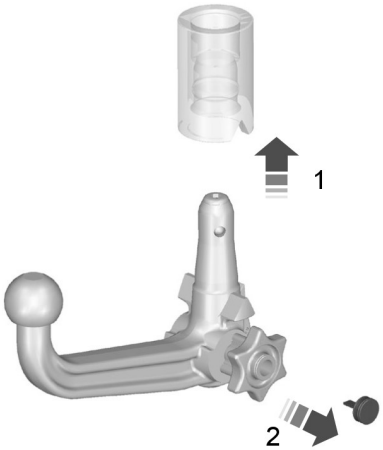
Note: *The red mark on the handwheel must align with the green mark on the tow ball.*

4. Release the handwheel. The tow ball arm is unlocked.

Inserting the Tow Ball Arm

WARNING

The tow ball arm may only be inserted when completely unlocked.



E71330

Note: *Pull out the plug.*

1. Insert the tow ball arm vertically and press it upwards until it engages.

Note: *Do not hold your hand near the handwheel.*

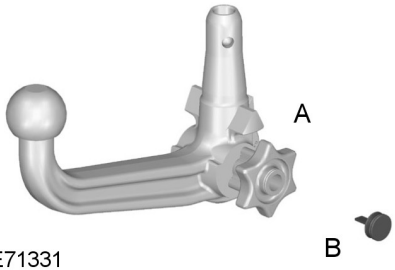
Note: *The green mark on the handwheel must align with the green mark on the tow ball.*

2. Turn the key counterclockwise and remove the key to lock the tow ball.
3. Pull the protecting cap from the key bow and press it onto the lock.

Driving With a Trailer

WARNING

If any of the below conditions cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by an authorized dealer.

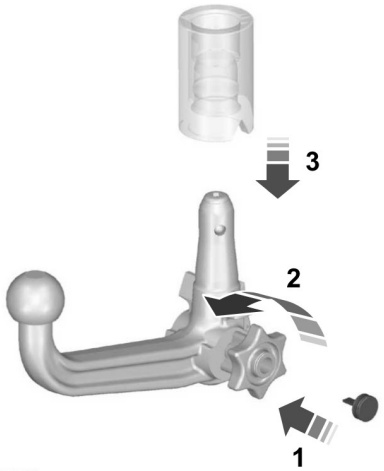


E71331

Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is correctly locked. Check that:

- the green marks are aligned
- the handwheel (A) is correctly fitted to the tow ball arm
- you have removed the key (B)
- the tow ball arm is securely positioned.

Removing the Tow Ball Arm



E173529

Note: *Unhitch the trailer.*

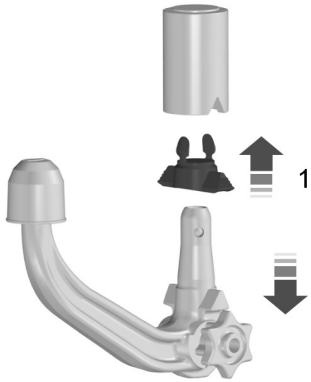
1. Remove the protecting cap. Press the cap into the key bow. Insert the key and unlock.
2. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel out, turn it counterclockwise against the stop.
3. Remove the tow ball arm.
4. Release the handwheel.

When unlocked in this way, the tow ball arm can be reinserted at any time.

Driving Without a Trailer

WARNING

Never unlock the tow ball arm with the trailer attached.



E94771

Remove the tow ball arm. Insert the plug into its seat (1).

Maintenance

WARNING

Remove the tow ball arm and protect the seat with the plug before steam cleaning your vehicle.

Keep the system clean. Periodically lubricate bearings, sliding surfaces, and locking balls with resin-free grease or oil and the lock with graphite.

In case of loss, replacement keys are available from the manufacturer by stating the number on the lock cylinder.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

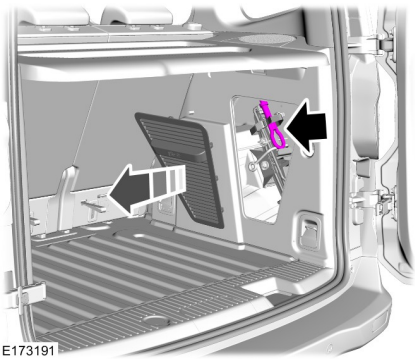
TOWING POINTS

All Vehicles

WARNING

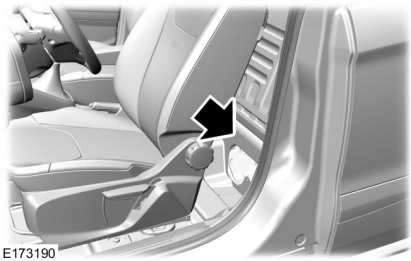
The recovery hook has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it and make sure that it is fully tightened. Failure to do so could result in the recovery hook becoming loose.

You must carry the recovery hook in your vehicle at all times.



E173191

Transit



E173190

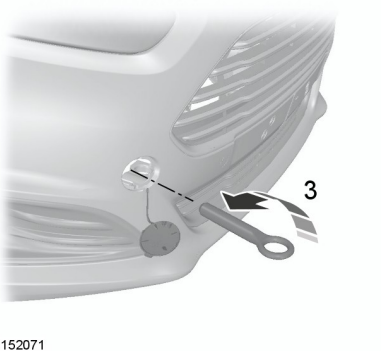
All Vehicles

Front Towing Hook



E152070

1. Push the cover.
2. Release the cover.

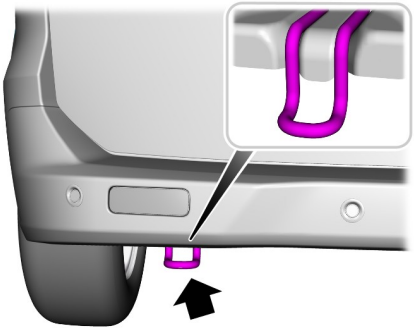


E152071

3. Install the recovery hook.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Rear Towing Hook



E174389

Note: *If your vehicle has a tow bar, use this to tow other vehicles.*

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

WARNINGS

You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

When towing your vehicle you must select neutral. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle that is being towed.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 124).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h). See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 125).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

BREAKING-IN

Tires

WARNING

New tires need to be run-in for approximately 300 miles (500 kilometers). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

WARNING

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 100 miles (150 kilometers) in town and for the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers) on freeways.

Engine

WARNING

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE

WARNING

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and cause the engine to shut down completely.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 58).

You must only drive your vehicle for a short distance if the engine overheats. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain. The engine will continue to operate with limited power for a short time.

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine will reduce. The air conditioning will switch off and the engine cooling fan will operate continually.

1. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Switch the engine off immediately to prevent severe engine damage.
3. Wait for the engine to cool down.
4. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 150).
5. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

The following will help to improve fuel consumption.

Tire Pressures

Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy. For best results use the economy pressures. See **Technical Specifications** (page 174).

Gear Shifting

Use the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions.

Anticipation

Adjust your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles without the need for heavy braking or acceleration.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Efficient Speed

Higher speeds use more fuel. Reduce your cruising speed on open roads.

Accessories

Try not to add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.

Electrical Systems

Switch off all electrical systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -13°F (-25°C).

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

WARNINGS

Drive through water in an emergency only and not as part of normal driving.

Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

In an emergency, you can drive your vehicle through water to a maximum depth of 8 inches (200 millimeters) and at a maximum speed of 6 mph (10 km/h). You must take extra care when driving through flowing water.

When driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop your vehicle. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Depress the brake pedal lightly to check that the brakes are functioning correctly.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that your vehicle's lamps are fully operational.
- Check the power assistance of the steering system.

FLOOR MATS

WARNINGS

Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.

Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

WARNINGS

Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.


E142666

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel. Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.

Press the button again to turn them off.

Note: *If used when the engine is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your engine.*

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the hazard warning flashers may flash if you brake heavily.*

FIRST AID KIT

The first aid kit can be stowed under the front passenger seat or in the luggage compartment.

WARNING TRIANGLE

The warning triangle can be stowed under the front passenger seat.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING

Failure to inspect and if necessary repair fuel leaks after a crash may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. We recommend that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any crash.

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, your vehicle is fitted with a fuel pump shut-off feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shut-off.

Should the engine turn off after a crash, you may restart the engine by carrying out the following.

Ignition Switch

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Switch the ignition to position **III**.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Switch the ignition on again to re-enable the fuel pump.

Note: *Various system checks are automatically carried out before the vehicle will restart. if your vehicle fails to restart after the third attempt, the system has detected a fault that requires service. We recommend you contact an authorized dealer.*

Keyless Starting (If Equipped)

1. Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.
2. Press the brake pedal, and then press and release the button once.
3. Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.
4. Press the brake pedal, and then press and hold the button until the engine starts.

Note: *Various system checks are automatically carried out before the vehicle will restart. if your vehicle fails to restart after the third attempt, the system has detected a fault that requires service. We recommend you contact an authorized dealer.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS

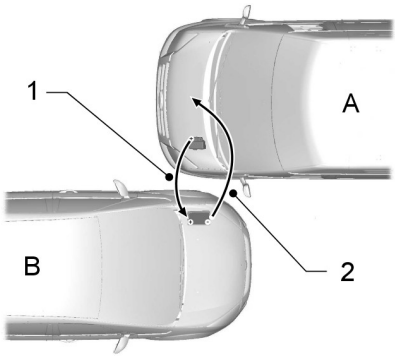
Do not use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as grounding points.

Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

Always use booster cables with insulated clamps and adequate size cable.

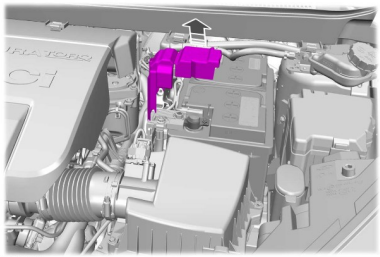
Note: *Do not disconnect the battery.*

To Connect the Booster Cables



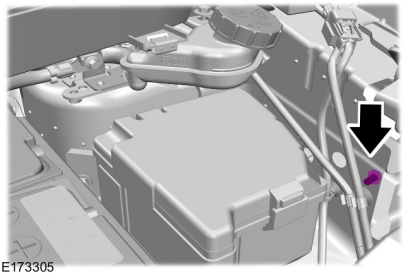
E75524

A	Flat battery vehicle
B	Booster battery vehicle
1	Positive connection cable
2	Negative connection cable



E173304

1. Position the vehicles so that they do not touch one another.
2. Switch the ignition off and any electrical equipment.
3. Lift up the battery positive connection point cover. For item location, refer to the appropriate under hood overview. See **Maintenance** (page 141).
4. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle B with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle A (cable 1).



E173305

5. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle B to the Jump start stud of vehicle A (cable 2).

WARNINGS

Do not connect directly to the negative (–) terminal of the flat battery.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

WARNINGS


Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

To Start the Engine

1. Run the engine of vehicle B at a moderately high speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle A.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

WARNING

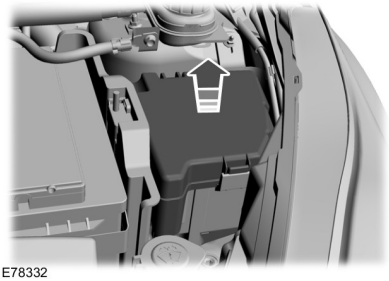

Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E78332

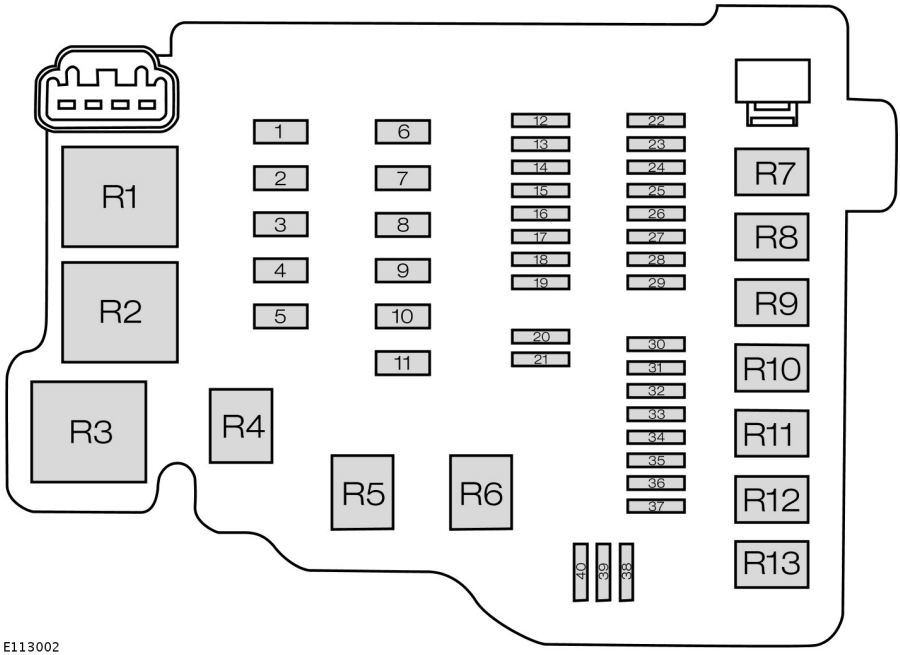
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

This fuse box is located behind the glove box. Open the glove box and empty the contents. Press the sides inwards and swivel the glove box downward.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



Fuse	Fuse Rating	Circuits Protected
F1	30A	Anti-lock brake system.
F2	60A	Cooling fan.
F3	30A	Cooling fan.
	40A	
F4	30A	Blower motor.
F5	60A	Passenger compartment fuse box supply.
F6	30A	Central locking system.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Fuse	Fuse Rating	Circuits Protected
F7	60A	Ignition relay.
F8	60A	Glow plugs.
F9	40A	Left-hand heated windshield element.
F10	40A	Right-hand heated windshield element.
F11	30A	Starter motor.
F12	10A	Left-hand high beam.
F13	10A	Right-hand high beam.
F14	15A	Water pump - EcoBoost.
F15	20A	Ignition coil.
F16	15A	Powertrain control module.
F17	15A	Heated oxygen sensor.
F17	20A	Powertrain control module.
F18	-	Not used.
F19	7.5A	Air conditioning compressor.
F20	10A	Heated washer nozzle.
F21	-	Not used.
F22	-	Not used.
F23	15A	Front fog lamps.
F24	15A	Direction indicators.
F25	15A	Left-hand exterior lamps.
F26	15A	Right-hand exterior lamps.
F27	7.5A	Powertrain control module.
F28	20A	Anti-lock brake system.
F29	10A	Air conditioning clutch.
F30	10A	Water-in-fuel sensor.
F31	-	Not used.
F32	20A	Horn.

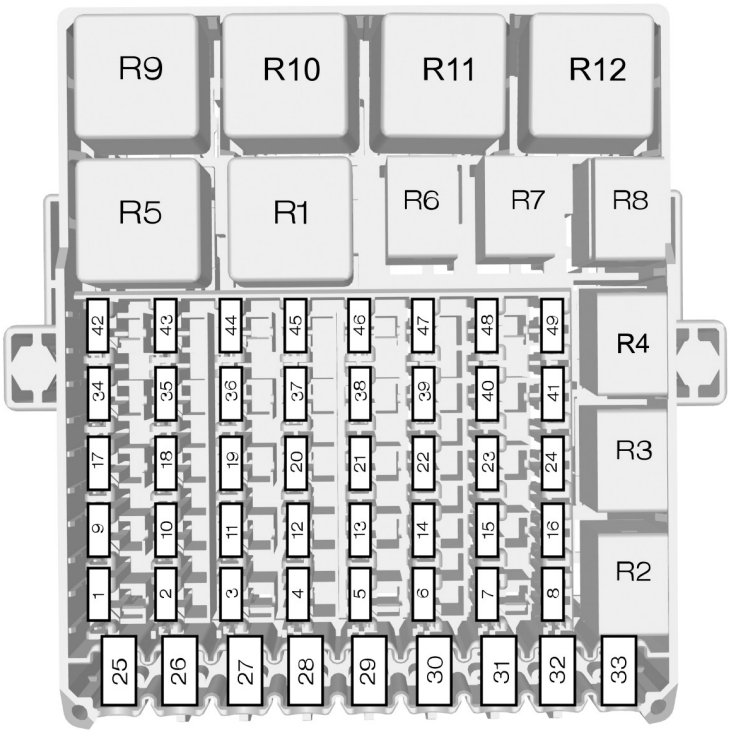
Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Fuse	Fuse Rating	Circuits Protected
F33	20A	Heated rear window.
F34	20A	Fuel pump. Fuel heater.
F35	15A	Anti-theft alarm.
F36	-	Not used.
F37	-	Not used.
F38	-	Not used.
F39	-	Not used.
F40	-	Not used.

Relay	Circuits Switched
R1	Cooling fan.
R2	Glow plugs.
R3	Powertrain control module.
R4	High beam.
R5	Not used.
R6	Not used.
R7	Cooling fan.
R8	Starter motor.
R9	Air conditioning clutch.
R10	Front fog lamps.
R11	Fuel pump. Fuel heater.
R12	Not used.
R13	Blower motor.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E173109

Fuse	Fuse Rating	Circuits Protected
F1	7.5A	Heated windshield. Blower motor. Rain sensor module. Auto-dimming interior mirror.
F2	10A	Stop lamp switch.
F3	5A	Reversing lamps. Rear parking aid camera.
F4	7.5A	Headlamp leveling.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Fuse	Fuse Rating	Circuits Protected
F5	7.5A	Power folding mirrors.
F6	15A	Rear window wiper.
F7	15A	Windshield washer pump.
F8	3A	USB charger.
F9	15A	Passenger heated seat.
F10	15A	Driver heated seat.
F11	-	Not used.
F12	10A	Airbag module.
F13	10A	Blower motor relay. Immobilizer. Power steering. Instrument panel cluster.
F14	7.5A	Powertrain control module. Fuel pump.
F15	7.5A	Audio unit. Instrument panel cluster.
F16	7.5A	Heated windshield.
F17	-	Not used.
F18	10A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.
F19	10A	Data link connector.
F20	15A	Trailer tow module.
F21	15A	Audio unit. Navigation unit.
F22	7.5A	Instrument cluster.
F23	7.5A	Front control/display interface module. Air conditioning control module. Hazard flasher switch.
F24	10A	SYNC module. Global positioning system module.
F25	30A	Power windows.
F26	30A	Windshield wipers.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Fuse	Fuse Rating	Circuits Protected
F27	30A	Rear parking aid camera.
F28	30A	Auto-start-stop power supply.
F29	20A	Rear auxiliary power points.
F30	20A	Cigar lighter socket. Front auxiliary power points.
F31	30A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. Data link connector. Trailer tow module. Audio unit. Navigation unit. Instrument panel cluster. Front control/display interface module. Air conditioning control module. Hazard flasher switch. SYNC module. Global positioning system module.
F32	-	Not used.
F33	-	Not used.
F34	20A	Central locking system.
F35	-	Not used.
F36	20A	Heated rear window.
F37	15A	Ignition switch.
F38	7.5A	Anti-theft alarm.
F39	-	Not used.
F40	-	Not used.
F41	-	Not used.
F42	7.5A	Rear parking aid camera.
F43	-	Not used.
F44	-	Not used.
F45	10A	Heated exterior mirrors.
F46	-	Not used.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Fuse	Fuse Rating	Circuits Protected
F47	-	Not used.
F48	-	Not used.
F49	-	Not used.

Relay	Circuits Switched
R1	Ignition.
R2	Cigar lighter socket. Front auxiliary power points.
R3	Central locking system.
R4	Heated rear window.
R5	Not used.
R6	Not used.
R7	Not used.
R8	Rear auxiliary power points.
R9	Left-hand heated windshield element.
R10	Right-hand heated windshield element.
R11	Not used.
R12	Not used.

CHANGING A FUSE

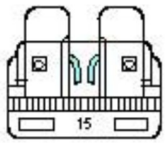
WARNINGS

Do not modify the electrical system of your vehicle in any way. Have repairs to the electrical system and the replacement of relays and high current fuses carried out by an authorized dealer.

Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off before attempting to change a fuse.

WARNINGS

Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E142430

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

If electrical components in your vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. A break in the fuse wire will indicate a blown fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford authorized repairers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. Authorized repairers are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly, with a wide range of highly specialized tools.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following checks.

WARNINGS

Switch the ignition off before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage.

Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan. Under certain conditions, the fan may continue to run for several minutes after you have switched the engine off.

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

Daily Checks

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

Check When Refueling

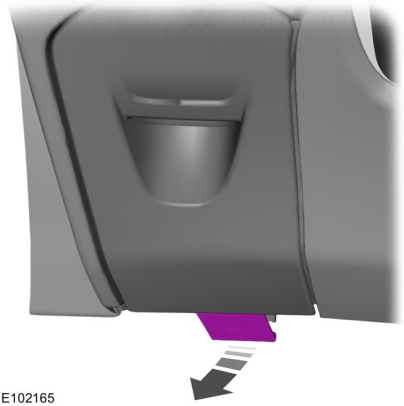
- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 149).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 151).
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 151).
- Tire pressures (when cold). See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 151).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 161).

Monthly Checks

- Engine coolant level (engine cold). See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 150).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 151).

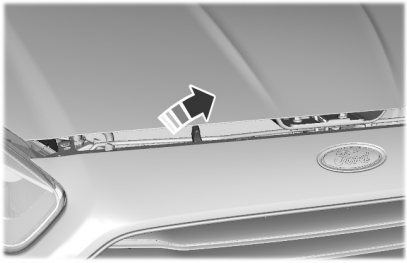
OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

Opening the Hood


E102165

1. Pull the release lever.
2. Slightly lift the hood.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.



E175490

3. Move the catch toward the center of your vehicle to release the hood.



E87786

4. Open the hood and support it with the hood strut.

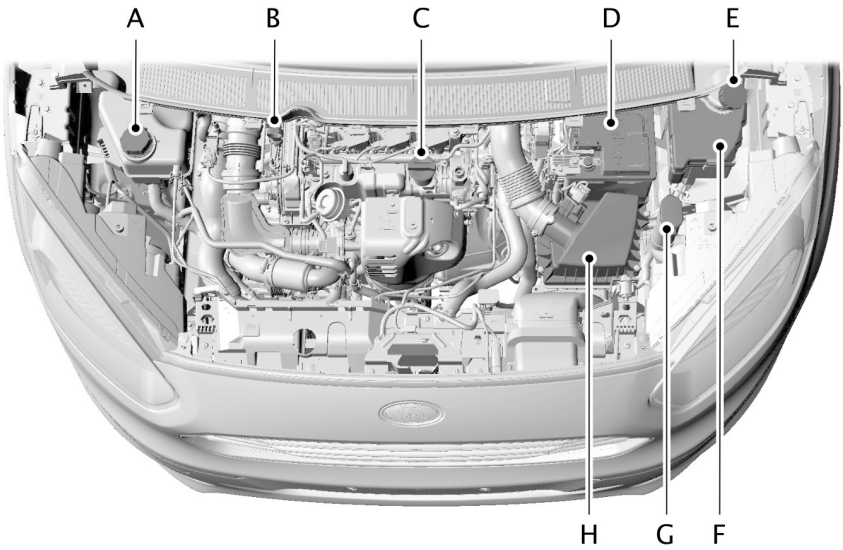
Closing the Hood

1. Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 8-12 in (20-30 cm).

Note: *Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, LHD



E172819

A Engine coolant reservoir: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 150).

B Engine oil dipstick: See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 149).

C Engine oil filler cap: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 149).

D Battery: See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 151).

E Brake and clutch fluid reservoir: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 151).

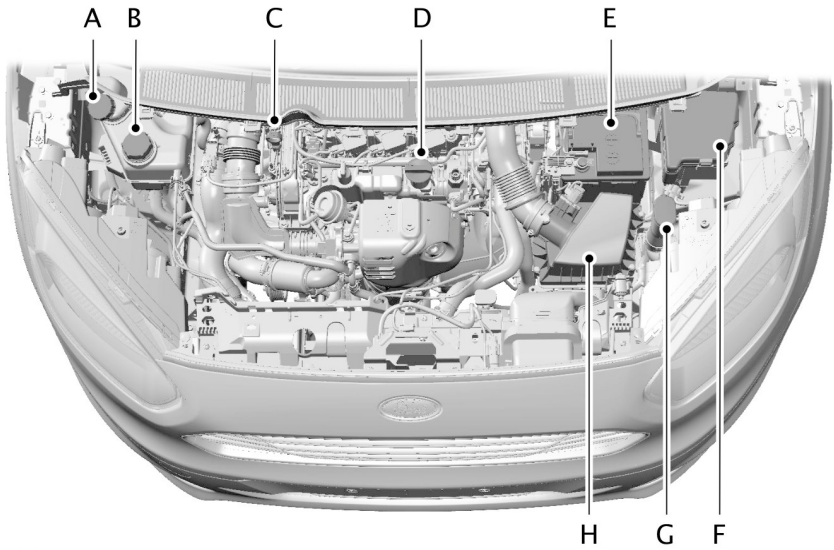
F Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 132).

G Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 151).

H Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, RHD



E172820

A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 151).

B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 150).

C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 149).

D Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 149).

E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 151).

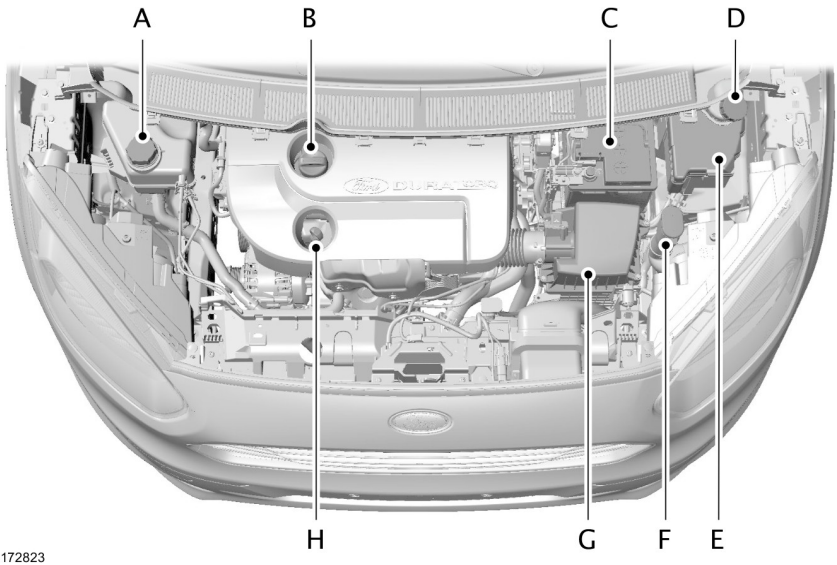
F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 132).

G Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 151).

H Air cleaner.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL, LHD



A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 150).

B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 149).

C Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 151).

D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 151).

E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 132).

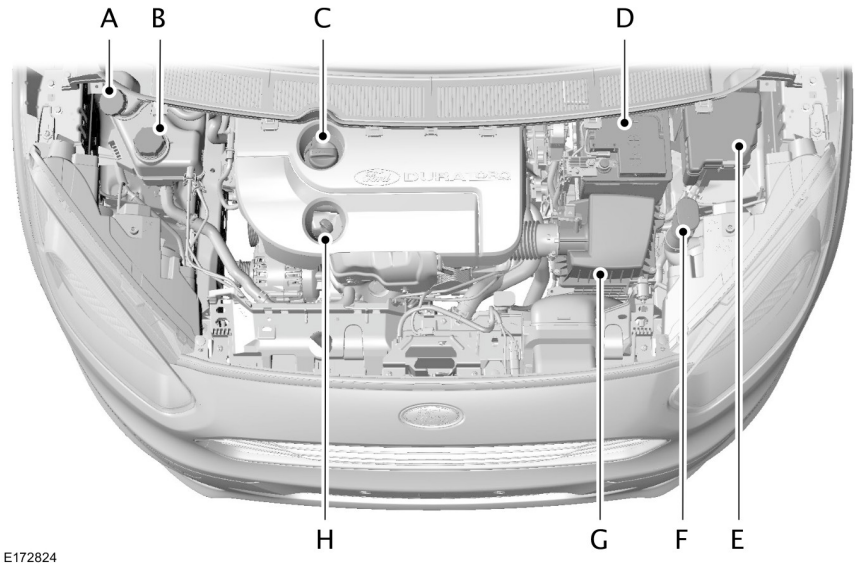
F Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 151).

G Air cleaner. No maintenance necessary.

H Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 149).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL, RHD



A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 151).

B Engine coolant reservoir: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 150).

C Engine oil filler cap: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 149).

D Battery: See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 151).

E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 132).

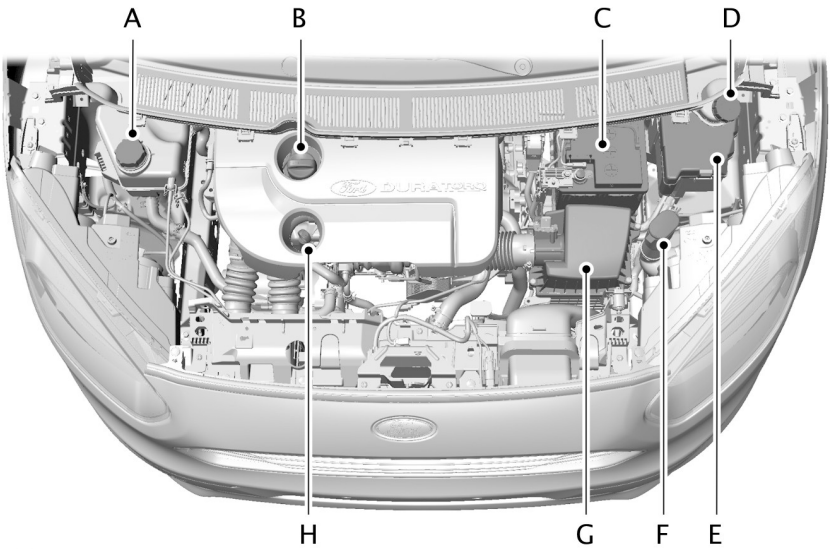
F Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 151).

G Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.

H Engine oil dipstick: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 149).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.6L DURATORQ-TDCI (DV) DIESEL, LHD



E172821

A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 150).

B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 149).

C Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 151).

D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 151).

E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 132).

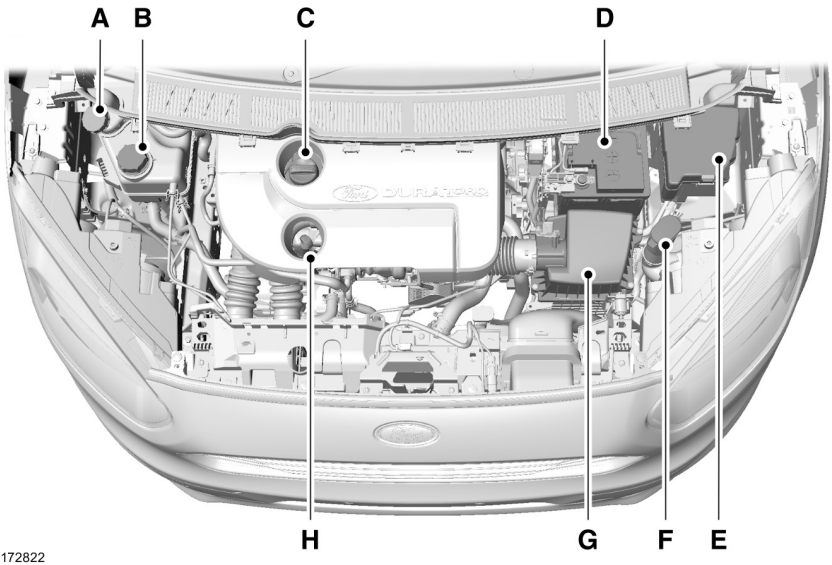
F Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 151).

G Air cleaner.

H Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 149).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.6L DURATORQ-TDCI (DV) DIESEL, RHD



E172822

A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 151).

B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 150).

C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 149).

D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 151).

E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 132).

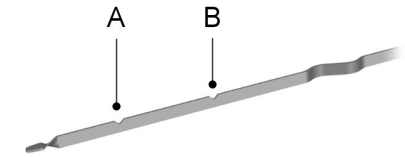
F Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 151).

G Air cleaner. No maintenance necessary.

H Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 149).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

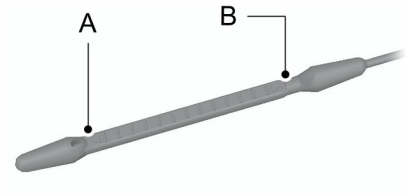
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



E141337

A Minimum
B Maximum

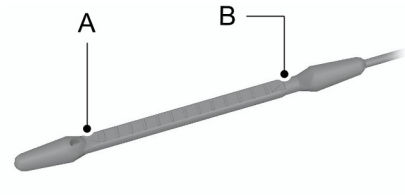
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL



E140423

A Minimum
B Maximum

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L DURATORQ-TDCI (DV) DIESEL



E140423

A Minimum
B Maximum

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 180).

Note: *Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.*

Note: *Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions they may cause engine damage.*

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3000 mi (5,000 km).*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Adding Engine Oil

WARNINGS

Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

1. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
2. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 180).
3. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.*

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

WARNINGS

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Only add coolant when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilt on a hot exhaust.



E169064

Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks. If the coolant level is on or below the **MIN** mark, add coolant meets the correct specification immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 180).

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may therefore extend beyond the **MAX** mark.*

Adding Engine Coolant

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add engine coolant to the **MAX** mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water, or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 180).*

Note: *In an emergency you can add just water to the cooling system to reach a vehicle service station.*

Note: *Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of engine coolant can cause engine damage, for example corrosion, overheating or freezing.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID CHECK

WARNINGS

Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. This could cause serious personal injury. Rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and consult a physician.

A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level outside of the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the brake or clutch systems. Have your vehicle checked immediately.



E169063

See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 180).

Note: *The brake and the clutch systems are supplied from the same reservoir.*

WASHER FLUID CHECK

Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. We recommend that you use only high quality washer fluid.

For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNING

For vehicles with Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 141).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

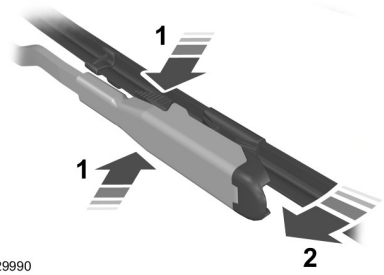
You can manually move the wiper arms when you switch the ignition off. Pull the wiper blade and wiper arm away from the glass. This allows for ease of wiper blade replacement and cleaning under the wiper blades.

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

Changing the Front Wiper Blades

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.



E129990

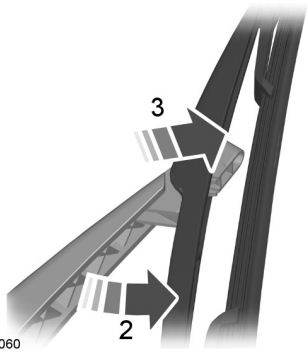
2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when you switch the ignition on.*

Rear Window Wiper Blades

Liftgate

1. Lift the wiper arm.



E130060

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.

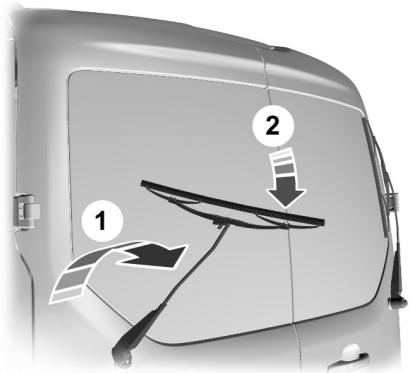
Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First F

4. Remove the wiper blade.

Install new wiper blades in the reverse order.

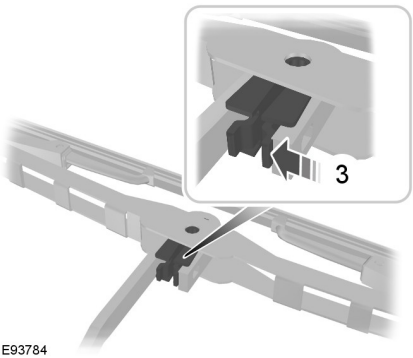
Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

Double Rear Doors



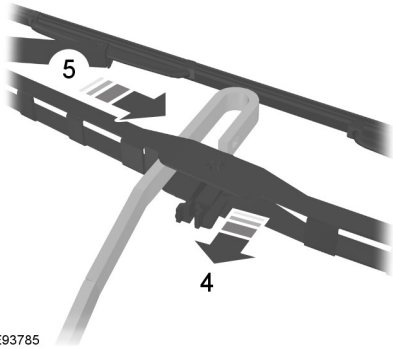
E165586

1. Lift the wiper arm.
2. Position the wiper blade at right angles to the wiper arm.



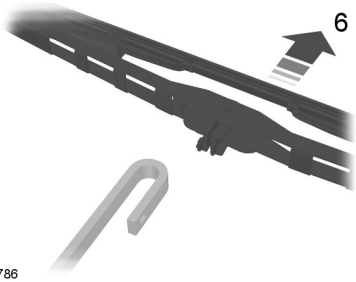
E93784

3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.



E93785

4. Unhook the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
5. Slide the wiper blade to the side.



E93786

6. Remove the wiper blade.

Install new wiper blades in the reverse order.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

CHANGING A BULB

WARNINGS

Switch all of the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

WARNINGS

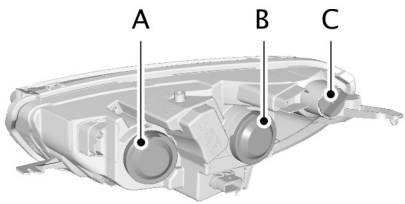
Bulbs become hot when in use. Let them cool down before you remove them.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 157).

The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Install in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer.*

Headlamp

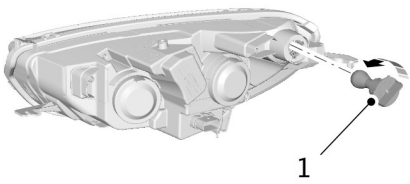


E173014

A	Daytime running lamp and headlamp high beam
B	Headlamp low beam
C	Direction indicator

Note: *You may have to remove a cover to gain access to the bulb.*

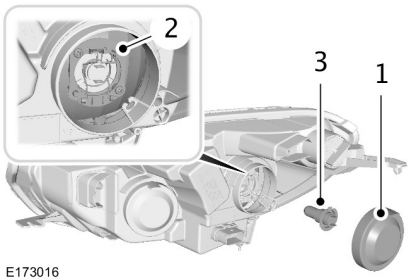
Direction Indicator



E173015

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

Headlamp Low Beam



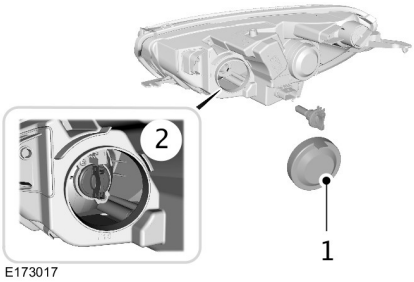
E173016

1. Remove the cover.
2. Release the clip.
3. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.

Note: *Do not touch the glass of the bulb.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Headlamp High Beam



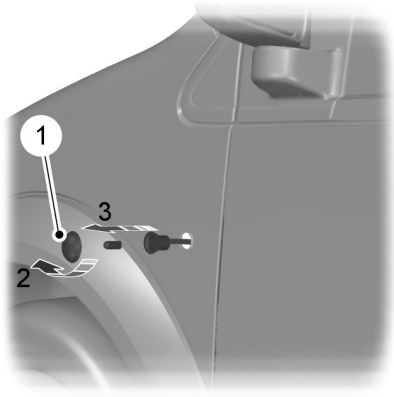
E173017

1. Remove the cover.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

Note: *Do not touch the glass of the bulb.*

Note: *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

Side Repeaters

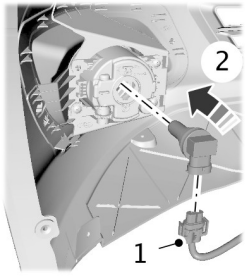


E76063

1. Carefully remove the side repeater.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

Note: *Do not touch the glass of the bulb.*

Front Fog Lamps



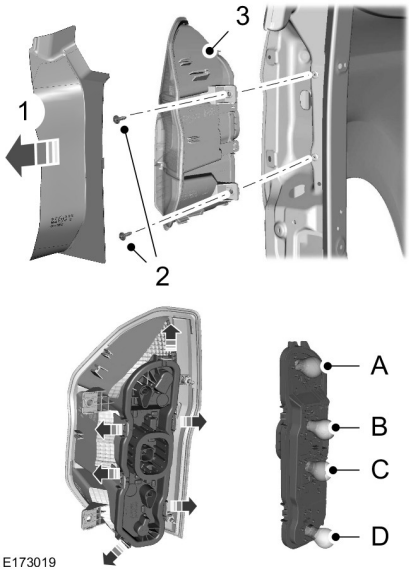
E173018

1. Disconnect the electrical connector.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

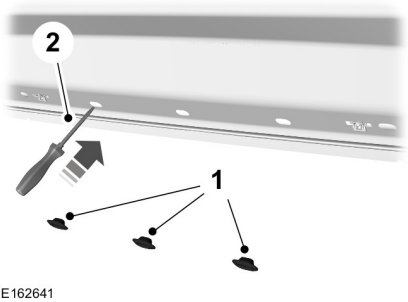
Rear Lamps



A Tail and brake lamp
B Direction indicator
C Reversing lamp
D Fog lamp

1. Remove the screws.
2. Remove the lamp and unclip the bulb holder.
3. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

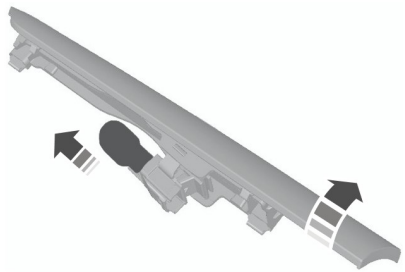
Central High Mounted Brake Lamp



1. Remove the rubber grommets.

Note: *If fitted, remove the trim panel first.*

2. Using a screwdriver, gently pry the clips to release the lamp.

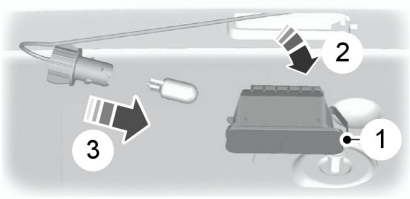


3. Carefully remove the lamp.
4. Remove the bulb.

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

License Plate Lamp

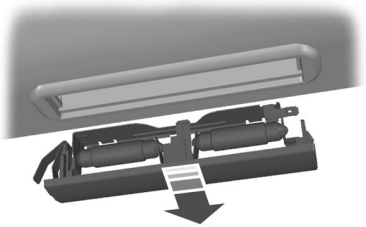


E72789

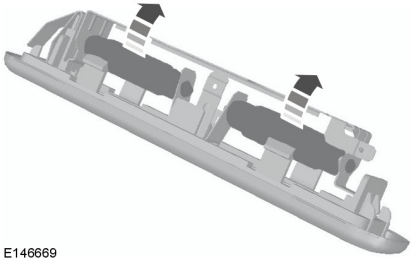
1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it. Pull the bulb straight out

Interior Lamp

Entrance Lamps



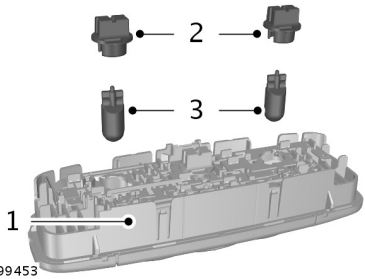
E154369



E146669

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Remove the bulbs.

Reading Lamps



E99453

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Exterior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Brake and tail lamp	P21/5W	21/5
Central high mounted brake lamp	W16W	16
Front direction indicator lamp	PY21W	21
Front fog lamps.	H11	55

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Front side lamp	W5W	5
High beam headlamp and daytime running lamp	H15	55/15
License plate lamp	W5W	5
Low beam headlamp	H7	55
Rear direction indicator lamp	PY21W	21
Rear fog lamp.	P21W	21
Reversing lamp	P21W	21
Side repeater lamp	WY5W	5

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer.*

Interior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Front interior lamp	W6W	6
Map reading lamp	W6W	6
Load space lamp	211 Festoon	10

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

WARNINGS

If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield.

Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.

Some car wash installations use water at high pressure. This could damage certain parts of your vehicle.

Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.

Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

Cleaning the Headlamps

WARNINGS

Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.

Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

Cleaning the Rear Window

WARNING

Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

Cleaning the Chrome Trim

WARNINGS

Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.

Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.

Body Paintwork Preservation

WARNINGS

Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.

Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.

Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

Note: *Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.*

Safety Belts

WARNINGS

Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

WARNINGS

Do not allow moisture to penetrate the safety belt retractor mechanism.

Clean them with interior cleaner or water applied with a soft sponge. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

WARNING

Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.

Rear Windows

WARNING

Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.

Note: *Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.*

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.*

Note: *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.*

Note: *If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Note: *Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

GENERAL INFORMATION

A decal with tire pressure data is located in the driver's door opening.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.

Note: *Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.*

Note: *Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.*

Note: *If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.*

Note: *If you intend to change the size of the wheels from that fitted at the factory, check the suitability with an authorized dealer.*

TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT

Location

See **Vehicle Interior Overview** (page 18).
See **Vehicle Interior Overview** (page 12).

General Information

WARNINGS

Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control personal injury or death.

Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

WARNINGS

Do not use the kit on run flat tires. This could cause loss of vehicle control personal injury or death.

Do not try to seal damage to the tire sidewall. The tire could burst and cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

The kit seals most tire punctures with a diameter of up to 0.24 in (6 mm). This is to temporarily restore mobility.

You must observe the following rules when using the kit:

- Drive with caution and avoid making sudden steering or driving maneuvers, especially if your vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer.
- The kit will provide you with an emergency temporary repair, enabling you to continue your journey to the next vehicle or tire specialist, or to drive a maximum distance of 124 mi (200 km).
- Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Keep the kit out of the reach of children.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -40ºF (-40ºC) and 158ºF (70ºC).

Using the Kit

WARNINGS

Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.

Compressed air can act as an explosive or propellant which could cause serious personal injury.

Never leave the kit unattended while in use.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

WARNINGS

Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause loss of vehicle control or personal injury.

You must only use the kit for the vehicle with which it was supplied.

- Apply the parking brake, even if you have parked on a level road.
- Do not attempt to remove foreign material, for example nails or screws from the tire.
- Leave the engine running while the kit is in use, but not if your vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated area (for example inside a building). In these circumstances, switch the compressor on with the engine switched off.
- You must replace the sealant bottle with a new one before the expiry date (see top of bottle).
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that the tire has been temporarily sealed with the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.

Inflating the Tire

WARNINGS

Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.

Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

WARNINGS

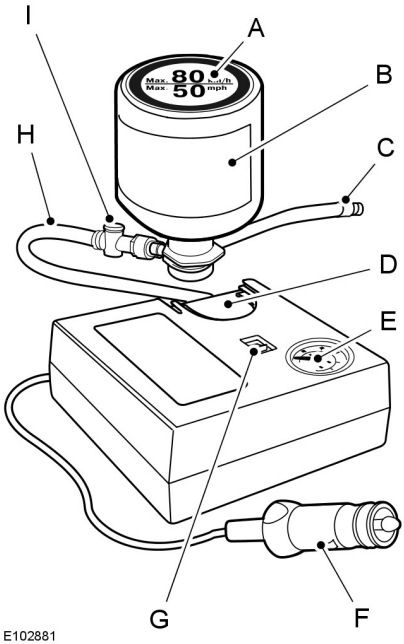
Watch the sidewall of the tire. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve I. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If contact occurs, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and consult a physician.

If the tire inflation pressure does not reach 26 psi (1.8 bar) within 10 minutes, the tire may have suffered excessive damage, making a temporary repair impossible. In this case, do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

Screwing the bottle onto the bottle holder will pierce the seal of the bottle. Do not unscrew the bottle from the holder as the sealant will escape, which could cause serious personal injury.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First



A Label.
B Sealant bottle.
C Sealant bottle hose.
D Bottle holder.
E Pressure gauge.
F Power plug with cable.
G Compressor switch.
H Repair kit hose.
I Pressure relief valve.

1. Remove the kit from the wrapping.
2. Peel off the label A showing the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) from the sealant bottle and attach it to the instrument panel in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
3. Take the hose H with the pressure relief valve I and the power plug with cable F out of the kit.
4. Connect the hose H with the pressure relief valve I to the sealant bottle B.
5. Engage the sealant bottle B into the bottle holder D.
6. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tire.
7. Screw the sealant bottle hose C firmly onto the valve of the damaged tire.
8. Make sure that the compressor switch G is in position 0.
9. Insert the power plug F into the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power socket. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 87). See **Cigar Lighter** (page 87).
10. Start the engine.
11. Move the compressor switch G to position 1.
12. Inflate the tire for no longer than 10 minutes to an inflation pressure of minimum 26 psi (1.8 bar) and a maximum of 51 psi (3.5 bar). Move the compressor switch G to position 0 and check the current tire pressure with pressure gauge E.

Note: *When the system pumps sealant through the tire valve, the pressure may rise up to 87 psi (6 bar) but will drop again after approximately 30 seconds.*

Note: *After you have switched the compressor off, you may hear air escaping from the damaged tire. This is normal and can be ignored if the specified minimum tire pressure has been reached.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

13. Remove the power plug F from the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power socket.
14. Quickly unscrew the hose C from the tire valve. Fasten the valve cap again.

Note: *Some residual sealant fluid may drip or spray out of hose C while you are disconnecting it. This is normal.*

15. Leave the sealant bottle B in the bottle holder D.
16. Make sure the kit is stored safely, but still easily accessible in your vehicle. The kit will be required again when you check the tire pressure.
17. Immediately drive approximately 2 ml (3 km) so that the sealant can seal the damaged area.

WARNING

If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed and drive with caution to a place where it is safe for you to stop your vehicle. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 15 psi (1 bar) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire.

18. Stop your vehicle after driving approximately 2 ml (3 km). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tire.
19. Attach the kit and read the tire pressure from the pressure gauge E.
20. Adjust it to the specified pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 174).
21. Once you have inflated the tire to its correct tire pressure, move the compressor switch G to position 0, remove the power plug F from the socket, unscrew the hose C and fasten the valve cap.
22. Leave hose C and H connected to the sealant bottle B and store the kit away safely.
23. Drive to the nearest tire specialist to get the damaged tire replaced. Before the tire is removed from the rim, inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant. You must renew the sealant bottle B and hose C as soon as possible once used.

Note: *Remember that the kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair after using the kit may differ from country to country. You should consult a tire specialist for advice.*

WARNING

Before driving, make sure the tire is adjusted to the recommended inflation pressure. You must monitor the tire pressure until the sealed tire is replaced. See **Technical Specifications** (page 174).

Empty sealant bottles can be disposed of together with normal household waste. Return remains of sealant to an authorized dealer or dispose of it in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

Checking the Tire Pressure

WARNING

Before driving, make sure the tire is adjusted to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 174). Monitor the tire pressure until the sealed tire is replaced.

1. Stop your vehicle after driving about 2 ml (3 km). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tire.
2. Attach the kit and read the tire pressure from the pressure gauge E.

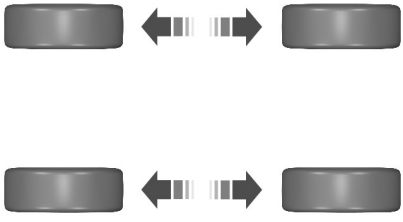
Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

3. If the pressure of the sealant-filled tire is 1.3 bar (19 psi) or more, adjust it to the specified pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 174).
4. Follow the inflation procedure once again to top up the tire pressure.
5. Check the tire pressure again from the pressure gauge E. If the tire pressure is too high, deflate the tire to the specified pressure using the pressure relief valve I.
6. Once you have inflated the tire to its correct tire pressure, move the compressor switch G to position 0, remove the power plug F from the socket, unscrew the hose H, fasten the valve cap and replace the protective cap.
7. Leave the sealant bottle B in the bottle holder D and store the kit away safely in its original location.
8. Drive to the nearest tire specialist to get the damaged tire replaced. Before the tire is removed from the rim, inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant. You must renew the sealant bottle B and hose C as soon as possible once used.

Note: *Remember that this kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair after usage of the kit may differ from country to country. You should consult a tire specialist for advice.*

Empty sealant bottles can be disposed of together with normal household waste. Return remains of sealant to an authorized dealer or dispose of it in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

TIRE CARE



E70415

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals of between 3000 and 6000 miles (5000 and 10000 kilometers).

WARNING

Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

USING WINTER TIRES

If winter tires are used you must inflate them to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressure table. See **Technical Specifications** (page 174).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNINGS

Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h).

Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

If your vehicle has wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Note: *The anti-lock braking system will continue to operate normally.*

Only use small link snow chains of approximately 10 mm.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 107).

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING

The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



You must check the tire pressures (including the spare tire where applicable) every two weeks when the tires are cold.

You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

See **Wheels and Tires** (page 161). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).

As a driver assistance feature, your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system. A warning lamp will illuminate when one or more of the tires are significantly under-inflated. If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates, you should stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, check the tires and inflate them to the correct pressure.

Driving on under-inflated tires can:

- Cause them to overheat.
- Lead to tire failure.
- Reduce fuel efficiency.
- Reduce tire life.
- Affect vehicle handling or stopping ability.

The system is not a substitute for correct tire maintenance.

You must maintain the correct tire pressures, even if low tire pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

The tire pressure monitoring system has a system malfunction indicator to warn you when the system is not operating correctly. The malfunction indicator and low tire pressure warning lamp have a combined function. When the system detects a

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

malfunction, the warning lamp will flash for approximately one minute and then remain illuminated. This sequence will occur every time you switch the ignition on while the malfunction remains. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressures. A malfunction may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of a replacement tire or wheel that prevents the system from functioning correctly. Always check the tire pressure monitoring system malfunction warning after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle. Make sure the replacement tires or wheels allow the system to continue to function correctly. See **When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System


E142549

You should always have tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Note: *Each road wheel and tire is fitted with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor attaches to the valve stem. The tire covers the pressure sensor and it is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.*

Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The system measures the pressure in the four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle.

The system detects this lower pressure as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates. You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

If you need to replace a road wheel and tire with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle. For additional information, see **Changing Tires with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System** in this section.

When You Believe the System is Not Operating Correctly

The main function of the system is to warn you when the tire pressures are low. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of operating correctly. See the following chart for information concerning the system:

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Warning lamp	Description	Action
Solid warning lamp	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Make sure tires are at the correct pressure. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 161). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar). 2. After inflating the tires to the correct pressure you must carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure** in this chapter.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.
Flashing warning lamp	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

Overview

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle requires different tire pressures in the front tires compared to the rear tires.

The system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

The tires need to be periodically rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the system needs to know when the tires have been rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and rear axles. With this information, the system can detect and correctly warn of low tire pressures.

Carrying Out the System Reset Procedure

Switch the ignition on. Using the information display control select:

Message	Description and Action
Vehicle settings	
Tyre pressure sys	Press and hold the **OK** button until confirmation appears. Alternatively, if your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until confirmation appears.

How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures

Under normal driving conditions tire pressures may increase by up to 4 psi (0.3 bar) from a cold start situation.

If the vehicle is stationary overnight and the temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, tire pressures may decrease by up to 3 psi (0.2 bar) when there is a drop in the ambient temperature of 31ºF (17ºC) or more. The system detects this pressure decrease as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.

When Inflating the Tires

When inflating the tires the system may not respond immediately to the air added to the tires.

If the Warning Lamp is On:

1. Check each tire to verify that none are flat.
2. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.
3. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.
4. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

Vehicles with a Spare Wheel

If the spare wheel is exactly the same type and size as the other fitted road wheels, you can replace the existing road wheel with the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is different to the other road wheels, it will carry a yellow label with the appropriate speed limit.

Refer to the following information before changing the road wheel.

WARNINGS

Drive the shortest possible distances.

Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

WARNINGS

Do not carry out any tire repairs on a spare wheel.

Do not drive through an automatic car wash.

If you are unsure what type of spare wheel you have do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Technical Specifications** (page 174).

The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced. Take care when parking next to a curb.

Note: *Your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.*

Vehicle Jack

WARNINGS

The vehicle jack supplied with your vehicle should only be used when changing a wheel in emergency situations.

Before using the vehicle jack, check that it is not damaged or deformed and that the thread is lubricated and free from foreign matter.

WARNINGS

Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and your vehicle.

Location

See **Vehicle Interior Overview** (page 18).
See **Vehicle Interior Overview** (page 12).

Note: *Vehicles with a temporary mobility kit do not have a vehicle jack or a wheel brace. See **Temporary Mobility Kit** (page 161).*

Changing Between Summer and Winter Tires

It is recommended to use a workshop type hydraulic jack for changing between summer and winter tires.

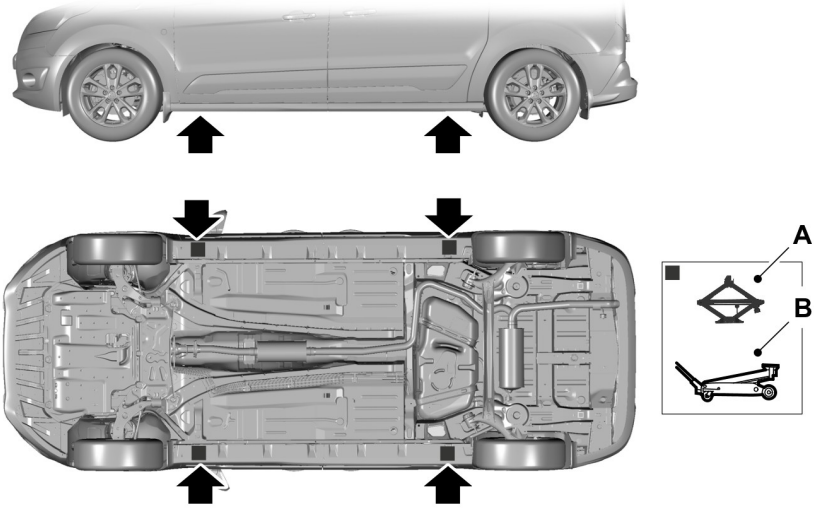
Note: *Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1.5 tons and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of approximately 3 inches (76 millimeters).*

Jacking and Lifting Points

WARNING

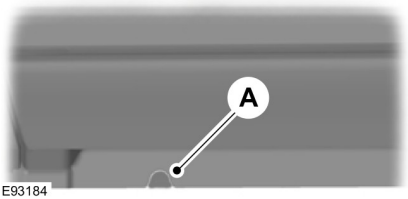
Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First



E164258

A Emergency use only
B Maintenance



E93184

Indentations in the sills show the location of the jacking points.



E142553

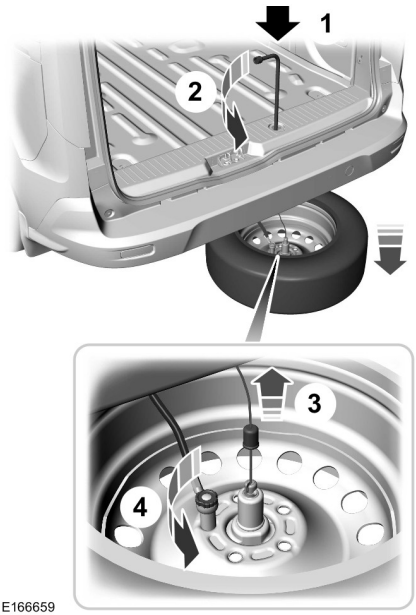
Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.



E93020

Note: *You can use the wheel brace to raise and lower the jack.*

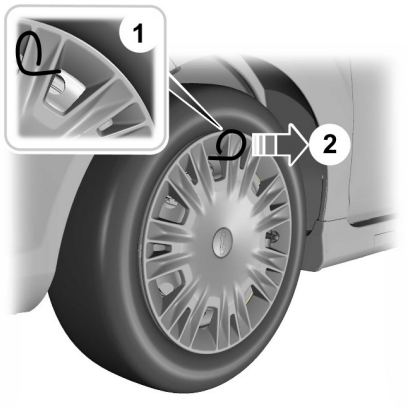
Lowering the Spare Wheel



E166659

1. Insert the hexagonal end of the wheel brace into the guide hole.
2. Turn the wheel brace counterclockwise until the spare wheel rests on the ground and there is slack in the cable.
3. Unscrew the cap and slide it back, turn the nipple of the cable through 90 degrees to remove the first cable.
4. Unscrew the nut to remove the second cable.

Removing the Wheel Trim



E122314

1. Insert the wheel trim remover. For vehicles with wheel covers, it is located in the glove box.
2. Remove the wheel trim.

Note: *Make sure that you pull the wheel trim remover at right angles to the trim.*

Removing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.

WARNINGS

Set up a warning triangle.

Make sure that your vehicle is on firm, level ground with the wheels pointing straight ahead.

Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.

If your vehicle has a manual transmission, select first or reverse gear. If it has an automatic transmission, select park.

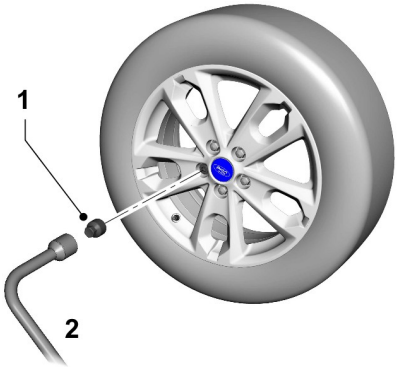
Have the passengers leave your vehicle.

Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.

Do not work underneath your vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

Make sure that the jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

1. Install the optional locking lug nut key. The key is located in the glove box.



E166675

2. Slacken the lug nuts.
3. Jack up your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the lug nuts and the wheel.

Note: *Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.*

Installing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid. See **Technical Specifications** (page 174).

Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. See an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.

WARNINGS

Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

Lug nuts are subject to change. You must make sure that you use only the specific lug nuts and wheels supplied for your vehicle. If in doubt see an authorized dealer.

Make sure there is no lubrication (grease or oil) on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.

Note: *The lug nuts of alloy wheels can also be used for the steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).*

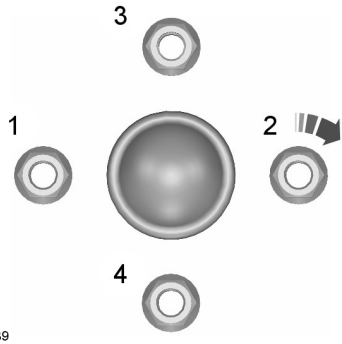
Note: *Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.*

Note: *Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.*

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts finger tight.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

3. Install the optional locking lug nut key.



E90589

4. Partially tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Lower your vehicle and remove the jack.
6. Fully tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 174).
7. Install the wheel trim using the ball of your hand.

WARNING

Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

Stowing the Flat Tire

Do not raise the spare wheel carrier without the wheel attached. Damage can occur to the winch mechanism if lowered without a wheel attached.

Note: *Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint. When stowing the flat tire use a sheet or mat under the wheel to protect the paint.*

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Lug Nut Torque

Specification
98 lb.ft (133 Nm)

Tire Pressures (Cold Tires)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)
185 60 R15	33 psi (2.3 bar)	36 psi (2.5 bar)	36 psi (2.5 bar)	41 psi (2.8 bar)
195 60 R15	32 psi (2.2 bar)	29 psi (2 bar)	36 psi (2.5 bar)	46 psi (3.2 bar)
195 55 R16	32 psi (2.2 bar)	29 psi (2 bar)	36 psi (2.5 bar)	41 psi (2.8 bar)

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - TOURNEO

Vehicle dimensions

Description	in (mm)
Overall length	163.7 (4,157)
Overall width including exterior mirrors	81.1 (2,060)
Overall height (measured at curb weight)	67.9 (1,725)
Wheelbase	98.0 (2,489)
Front track	58.9 (1,496)
Rear track	58.4 (1,484)

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

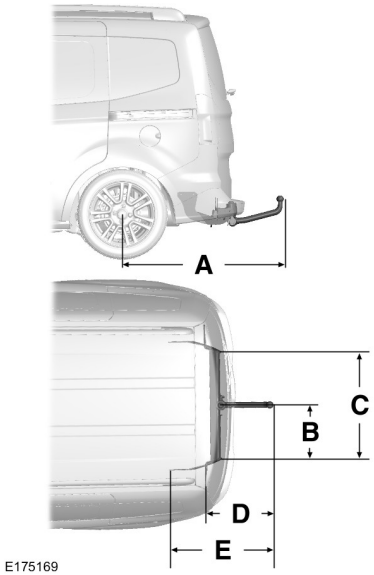
VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - TRANSIT

Vehicle dimensions

Description	in (mm)
Overall length	163.7 (4,157)
Overall width including exterior mirrors	81.1 (2,060)
Overall height (measured at curb weight)	68.9 (1,751)
Wheelbase	98.0 (2,489)
Front track	58.9 (1,496)
Rear track	58.4 (1,484)

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

TOWBAR DIMENSIONS



Measurement	Dimension description	in (mm)
A	Wheel center – end of tow ball	43.2 (1,097.5)
B	Center of tow ball - side member	19.5 (496)
C	Inner side of side member	28.6 (727)
D	Center of tow ball to attachment point one	23.4 (595)
E	Center of tow ball to center of attachment point two	27.1 (688)

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

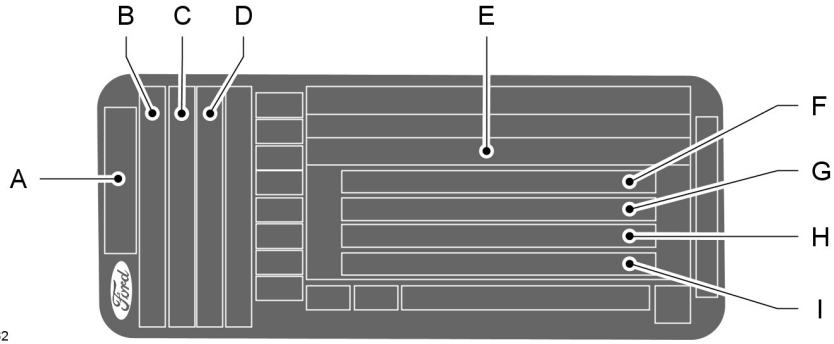
Maximum Permissible Nose Weight

lb (kg)
110 (50)

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

Note: *Your vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.*

Note: *The information shown on your vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

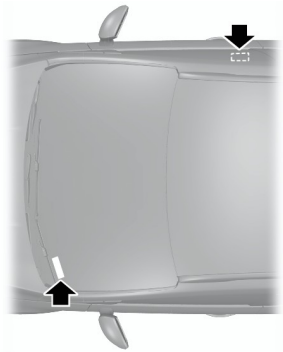


A	Model
B	Variant
C	Engine designation
D	Engine power and emission level
E	Vehicle identification number
F	Gross vehicle weight
G	Gross train weight
H	Maximum front axle weight
I	Maximum rear axle weight

You can find your vehicle identification number and maximum weights on a plate, which is located at the bottom of the lock side of the passenger door aperture.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



E87496

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine cooling system	1.4 gal (6.3 L)
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	0.9 gal (4.1 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	0.8 gal (4.0 L)
Engine oil top-up - raise the level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum	0.2 gal (0.8 L)
Fuel tank capacity	10.6 gal (48 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	0.6 gal (2.5 L)

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

Use oil and fluids that meet the defined specification and viscosity grades. If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade this may lead to:

- Component damage which is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

We recommend Castrol Engine Oil and Ford Engine Oil.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine cooling system	1.3 gal (6 L)
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	0.8 gal (3.8 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	0.7 gal (3.4 L)
Engine oil top-up - raise the level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum	0.3 gal (1.5 L)
Fuel tank capacity	10.4 gal (47 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	0.6 gal (2.5 L)

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-C
Engine Oil - 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-D
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2

Use oil and fluids that meet the defined specification and viscosity grades. If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade this may lead to:

- Component damage which is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

We recommend Castrol Engine Oil and Ford Engine Oil.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.6L DURATORQ-TDCI (DV) DIESEL

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine cooling system	1.3 gal (6 L)
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	0.8 gal (3.8 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	0.7 gal (3.5 L)
Engine oil top-up - raise the level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum	0.3 gal (1.5 L)
Fuel tank capacity	10.4 gal (47 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	0.6 gal (2.5 L)

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-C
Engine Oil - 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

Use oil and fluids that meet the defined specification and viscosity grades. If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade this may lead to:

- Component damage which is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

We recommend Castrol Engine Oil and Ford Engine Oil.

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

1.0L EcoBoost

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO2 Emissions
MPG (L/100km)	MPG (L/100km)	MPG (L/100km)	g/km
41.5–45.6 (6.8–6.2)	60.1 (4.7)	52.3–54.3 (5.4–5.2)	119–124

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

1.5L DuraTorq-TDCi Diesel

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO2 Emissions
MPG (L/100km)	MPG (L/100km)	MPG (L/100km)	g/km
60.1–64.2 (4.7–4.4)	76.3–78.5 (3.7–3.6)	68.9–72.4 (4.1–3.9)	103–108

1.6L DuraTorq-TDCi Diesel

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO2 Emissions
MPG (L/100km)	MPG (L/100km)	MPG (L/100km)	g/km
60.1–64.2 (4.7–4.4)	78.5–83.1 (3.6–3.4)	70.6–76.3 (4.0–3.7)	97–105

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Sound equipment may cause damage to your hearing if you are exposed to more than 85 dB (eighty five decibels). Law 11.29/2006.

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

Radio Reception Factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel away from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.

CD and CD Player Information

Note: *CD units are designed to play commercially-pressed 4.75 inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

Note: *CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only, wiping from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 or .WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.
- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 or .WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3 and WMA), only files with the .mp3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

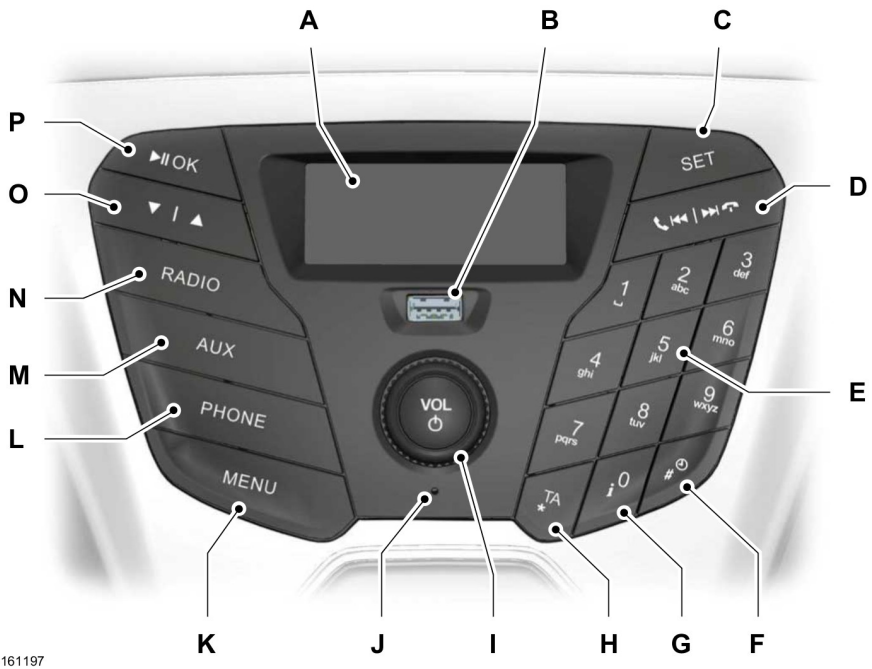
In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 and WMA files are played, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the .mp3 or WMA files in the current folder.

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.



E161197

A **Display:** Shows the status of the current mode selected.

B **USB socket:** Insert to play audio from a compatible external device or memory stick.

C **SET:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, balance and fade.

D **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track. **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track. In Bluetooth audio and USB modes press the buttons to go to the next or previous track.

D **Dial and end call:** Press the button to make and end a call. The steering wheel controls can also be used for this. See **Steering Wheel** (page 46).

E **Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns.

F **Clock:** Press the button to select clock setup.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

G **Information:** Press the button to access more information if it does not fit the display.

H **TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancel announcements during an active announcement.

I **On, Off and Volume:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.

J **Microphone:** Cell phone microphone.

K **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features, depending on which mode has been selected.

L **PHONE:** Press the button to access the Bluetooth phone feature of the system by pressing **PHONE** then **MENU**. When paired further presses of this button will display phone name, signal strength and the battery level.

M **AUX:** Press the button to access Bluetooth audio streaming, USB or Aux input playback.

N **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands. Press to cancel the menu or list browsing.

O **Cursor up and down:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices. In radio mode press to manual tune.

P **OK, Play and Pause:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections. Press to play or pause during playback with compatible external devices.

Set Button

This will allow you to adjust the sound settings, for example bass, treble, balance and fade.

1. Press the **SET** button until the required setting is displayed.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required level.
3. Press the **OK** button to confirm the new settings.

Radio Button

Press the **RADIO** button to select from the frequency bands available.

You can use the button to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Station Tuning Control

Seek Tuning

Select a frequency band and briefly press the seek up or seek down button. Seek tuning will stop at the first radio station it locates.

Manual Tuning

Use the up and down arrow buttons to tune down or up the frequency band in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.

Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations. They can be recalled by selecting the appropriate frequency band and pressing one of the preset buttons.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

1. Select a frequency band.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

You can repeat this on each frequency band and for each preset button.

Note: *When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies, and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.*

Traffic Information Control

Many stations that broadcast on the FM frequency band have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

Turning Traffic Announcements On and Off

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the **TA** or **TRAFFIC** button. A TA display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, TP will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or device playback.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** or **TRAFFIC** is turned off, then on again.

Note: *If traffic announcement is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non traffic announcement station no traffic announcement will be heard.*

Note: *When you are listening to a non traffic announcement station and turn traffic announcement off and on again a TP seek will occur.*

Traffic Announcement Volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming traffic announcement broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

Ending Traffic Announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** during the announcement.

Note: *If you press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** at any other time it will switch all announcements off.*

News Broadcasts

The audio unit may interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM frequency band, radio data system or other enhanced network linked stations.

The display will indicate there is an incoming announcement, during news broadcasts. When the audio unit interrupts for a news broadcast the preset volume level will be the same as traffic announcements.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Scroll to the news option and turn on or off with the up and down arrow buttons.
3. Press the **OK** button to return.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Alternative Frequencies

The majority of programs that broadcast on the FM frequency band have a program identification code, it can be recognized by audio units.

When your vehicle moves from one transmission area to another with the alternative frequencies tuning switched on, this function will search for the strongest station signal.

Under certain conditions, however, alternative frequencies tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and if necessary, it will search once across the selected frequency band for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, AF will appear in the display.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Scroll to the AF option and turn to auto or off with the up and down arrow buttons.
3. Press the **OK** button to return.

Regional Mode

Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centered on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network caries the same programming.

Regional mode on: This prevents random alternative frequency switches when neighboring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode off: This allows a larger coverage area if neighboring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause random alternative frequency switches if they are not.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Scroll to the region option and turn on or off with the up and down arrow buttons.
3. Press the **OK** button to return.

Phone

This section describes the functions and features of the Bluetooth cell phone hands free system.

The Bluetooth cell phone part of the system provides interaction with the audio system and your cell phone. It allows you to use the audio system to make and receive calls without having to hold your cell phone.

Note: *Using the system with the engine off will drain the battery.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Note: *As no common agreement exists, cell phone manufacturers are able to implement a variety of profiles in their Bluetooth devices. Because of this, an incompatibility can occur between the phone and hands free system, which in some cases may significantly degrade the system performance. To avoid this situation, only recommended phones should be used. To check if your cell phone is compatible, refer to the cell phone user manual or visit the regional Ford website.*

Bluetooth Setup

Before you can use your cell phone with your vehicle it must be paired to the audio system.

The following procedure is required before an initial Bluetooth phone connection can be made.

Note: *Up to five Bluetooth devices can be paired to the system.*

Note: *If there is an ongoing call when the phone in use is selected as the new active phone, the call is transferred to the vehicle audio system.*

Note: *Even if connected to the system, your phone can still be used in the usual way.*

Note: *If the ignition is switched off the phone call will remain in progress.*

Message	Description and Action
ADD DEVICE	1. Press the **PHONE** button and then keep pressing the **MENU** button to scroll to the screen display term. Press the **OK** button. 2. Press the **OK** button again and note the six digit number displayed. 3. Search for Bluetooth devices using the cell phone. For information on phone settings, refer to your cell phone user manual. 4. Select **FORD AUDIO** from the list of Bluetooth devices found by your phone. 5. Enter the six digit number into your cell phone when prompted to pair the audio system and cell phone.
SET PRIMARY	1. Once pairing has been successful the screen display term will be shown on the audio display. 2. Press the **OK** button twice to confirm your cell phone as the primary device for all future connections.
LOAD PHONEBK	1. The screen display term will then be displayed on the audio unit. Press the **OK** button twice to confirm that the contents of your phonebook are downloaded to the system. 2. The Bluetooth device name is displayed on the audio unit.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Phonebook Downloading

If your phonebook was not downloaded during initial Bluetooth pairing follow this process:

1. Press the **PHONE** button and then keep pressing the **MENU** button to scroll to the load phonebook option.
2. Press the **OK** button.

Deleting a Paired Device or Cell Phone

To remove a paired device follow this process:

1. Press the **PHONE** button and then keep pressing the **MENU** button to scroll to the delete device option.
2. Press the **OK** button. The first paired device name will be shown. Scroll to the required device name using the up and down arrow buttons. Select delete all to erase all paired devices.
3. Press the **OK** button multiple times to remove the device from the audio unit.

Privacy Mode

You can transfer a call from hands free to private mode during an active call.

Press the **MENU** button until the privacy option appears, then press the **OK** button to transfer. To return to hands free mode, press the dial button.

Phone Menu Options

Press the **PHONE** button to select phone mode. Press the **PHONE** button again to display information such as phone name, signal strength and battery level.

When in phone mode, press the **MENU** button to scroll through the various phone options.

Phone options
REDIAL
PHONEBOOK
CALL HISTORY
ADD DEVICE
SEL DEVICE
SET PRIMARY
DEL DEVICE
BT
BT OFF
LOAD PHONEBK

Press the **OK** button to select the required option, and use the up and down arrows to change features.

Making and Receiving Calls

Outgoing calls can be made by:

- Entering a number using the numeric keypad.
- Selecting a contact from the downloaded phonebook.
- Selecting a number or contact from the call history log.
- Using quick dial by pressing one of the radio preset buttons.
- Using the redial function.
- Using the cell phone.

Incoming calls can be answered by:

- Pressing the call pickup button on the audio unit.
- Using the cell phone.

Calls can be rejected using the end call button on the audio unit, or by using the cell phone directly.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

USB

Note: *Only use USB Mass-Storage device compliant devices.*

Note: *Always switch your audio unit to a different source (for example the radio) before unplugging the USB device.*

Note: *Do not install or connect USB hubs or splitters.*

Note: *The system is only designed to recognize and read suitable audio files from a USB device that conforms to the USB Mass-Storage device class or an iPod. Not all available USB devices can be guaranteed to function with the system.*

Note: *It is possible to connect compatible devices with a trailing USB lead as well as those that plug into the USB socket directly (for example USB memory sticks and pen drives).*

Note: *Some USB devices with a higher power consumption may not be compatible (for example some larger hard drives).*

Note: *Access time to read the files on the external device will vary depending upon factors such as the file structure, size and device content.*

The audio unit supports a range of external devices. Once connected, control of the external device is possible via the audio unit.

Operating the USB Device

Connect the device to the audio unit.

Select the USB device as the audio source by pressing the **AUX** button until the USB screen appears in the display. After first connecting the USB device, the first track within the first folder will start to play automatically. Following audio source switching, the position of playback on the USB device is remembered.

Press the seek up and down keys to skip forward or backward through tracks. Press and hold to fast forward and reverse through the track.

Message	Description
AUTOPL	USB playback will start automatically when you connect a compatible device. To turn this feature off, select this option and turn off using the menu function.

iPod

Connect the iPod to the audio unit.

Select the iPod as the audio source by pressing the **AUX** button until the iPod option appears in the display. After first connecting the iPod, the first track within the first folder will start to play automatically. Following audio source switching, the position of playback on the iPod is remembered.

Press the seek up and down keys to skip backward and forward through tracks.

Press and hold the seek keys to enable fast rewind or fast forward through track content.

Various functions may be controlled from the audio unit including:

- Next and previous track select.
- Track seek.
- Shuffle.
- Repeat.

Bluetooth Audio Streaming

Compatible Bluetooth devices can be connected to the audio unit to playback using the vehicle audio system.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Select the device as the audio source by pressing the **AUX** button until the Bluetooth audio option appears in the display.

The device playback can be controlled using the audio unit buttons play, pause, next and previous track.

Note: *Make sure the device is paired before using this feature.*

Declaration of Conformity

Hereby, Visteon Corporation, declares that this Bluetooth enabled car radio is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

EC Declaration of Conformity

Hereby,

Name of manufacturer:	**Palmela Electronics – Visteon Corporation**
Address:	**Estrada Nacional 252, KM 12 Volta Da Pedra**
City:	**Palmela**
Country:	**Portugal**

declares that this equipment:

Product description:	**VE-BT001 - ULC Medialess Radio – Bluetooth enabled car radio**
Type designation(s):	**VE-BT001**
Trademark:	**Visteon**

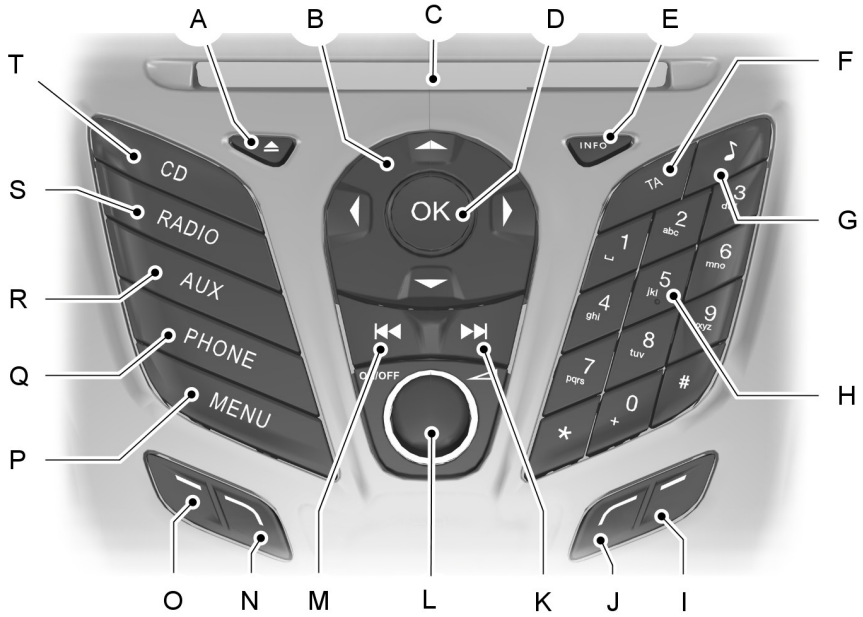
is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive
55013:2001 + A1:2003 +A2:2006
EN 301 489 -1, EN 301 489 -17
EN 300 328 v1.7.1
EN 60950-1 :2006 + All :2009 +A1:2010+A12:2011 IEG 60950-1 :2005 (2nd Edition):AM 1 :2009

E167208

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E130142

A **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

B **Cursor arrows:** Press an arrow button to scroll through on-screen choices.

C **CD slot:** Where you insert a CD.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

D **OK:** Press to confirm on-screen selections.

E **INFO:** Press to access radio, CD, USB and iPod information.

F **TA:** Press to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement.

G **Sound:** Press to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade.

H **Numeric keypad:** Press to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns.

I **Function button 4:** Press to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

J **Function button 3:** Press to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

K **Seek up:** Press to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD.

L **On, Off and Volume:** Press to switch the audio system on or off. Turn to adjust the volume.

M **Seek down:** Press to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD.

N **Function button 2:** Press to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

O **Function button 1:** Press to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

P **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features.

Q **PHONE:** Press to access the phone feature of the SYNC system by pressing **PHONE** then **MENU**.

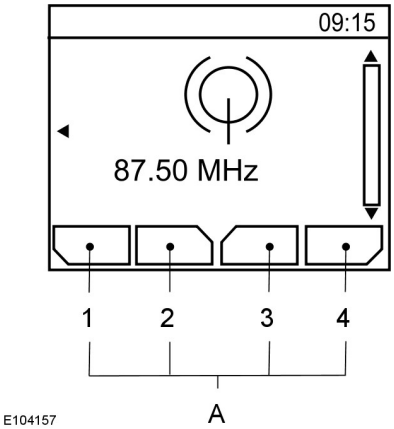
R **AUX:** Press to access the AUX and SYNC features. It will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

S **RADIO:** Press to select different radio bands. It will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

T **CD:** Press to change source to CD. It will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

Note: *An integrated multi-function display, located above the audio system, shows important information about your audio system controls. Various icons placed around the display screen light up when a function is active (for example CD, Radio or Aux.)*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.



A Descriptions for function buttons 1-4

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. The description for the current function displays in the screen.

Sound Button

This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass, middle and treble).

1. Press the sound button.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.
4. Press **OK** to confirm the new settings.

Radio Button

Press **RADIO** to select from the frequency bands available.

You can use the selector to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available frequency bands. Scroll to the required frequency band and press **OK**.

Station Tuning Control

DAB Service Linking

Switch DAB service linking on and off. See **Digital Radio** (page 205).

Note: *The system does not automatically turn on every time you switch on the ignition.*

Note: *Service linking allows cross-referencing to other corresponding frequencies of the same station, for example FM and other DAB ensembles.*

Note: *The system will automatically change to another corresponding station if the current one becomes unavailable, for example when leaving the coverage area.*

Seek Tuning

Select a frequency band and briefly press the seek up or seek down button. Seek tuning will stop at the first radio station it locates.

Manual Tuning

1. Press function button 2.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the frequency band in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
3. Press **OK** to continue listening to a station.

Scan Tuning

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

1. Press function button 3.
2. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected frequency band.
3. Press function button 3 again or **OK** to continue listening to a station.

Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations, they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate frequency band and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a frequency band.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

You can repeat this on each frequency band and for each preset button.

Note: *When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies, and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.*

Autostore Control

- Press and hold **RADIO**.
- When the system completes the search, it will restore sound and store the strongest signals on the autostore presets.

Note: *This will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM frequency band, and overwrite the previously stored stations. You can also store stations manually in the same way as other frequency bands.*

Traffic Information Control

Many stations that broadcast on the FM frequency band have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

Turning Traffic Announcements On and Off

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the **TA** or **TRAFFIC** button. A TA display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, TP will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and a message will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** or **TRAFFIC** is turned off, then on again.

Note: *If traffic announcement is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non traffic announcement station no traffic announcements will be heard.*

Note: *When you are listening to a non traffic announcement station and turn traffic announcement off and on again a TP seek will occur.*

Traffic Announcement Volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume, use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming traffic announcement broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Ending Traffic Announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** during the announcement.

Note: *If you press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** at any other time it will switch all announcements off.*

Automatic Volume Control

When available, automatic volume control adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

Press the **MENU** button.

Action	Message
1	Audio settings
2	Adaptive volume

1. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
2. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
3. Press the **MENU** button to return.

News Broadcasts

The audio unit may interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM frequency band, radio data system or other enhanced network linked stations.

The display will indicate there is an incoming announcement, during news broadcasts. When the audio unit interrupts for a news broadcast the preset volume level will be the same as traffic announcements.

Press the **MENU** button.

Action	Message
1	Audio settings
2	News

1. Turn on or off with the **OK** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button to return.

Alternative Frequencies

The majority of programs that broadcast on the FM frequency band have a program identification code, it can be recognized by audio units.

When your vehicle moves from one transmission area to another with the alternative frequencies tuning switched on, this function will search for the strongest station signal.

Under certain conditions, however, alternative frequencies tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and if necessary, it will search once across the selected frequency band for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, AF may appear in the display.

Press the **MENU** button.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Action	Message
1	Audio settings
2	Alt. frequency

1. Turn on or off with the **OK** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button to return.

Regional Mode

Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centered on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network caries the same programming.

Regional mode on: This prevents random alternative frequency switches when neighboring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode off: This allows a larger coverage area if neighboring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause random alternative frequency switches if they are not.

Press the **MENU** button.

Action	Message
1	Audio settings
2	RDS regional

1. Turn on or off with the **OK** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button to return.

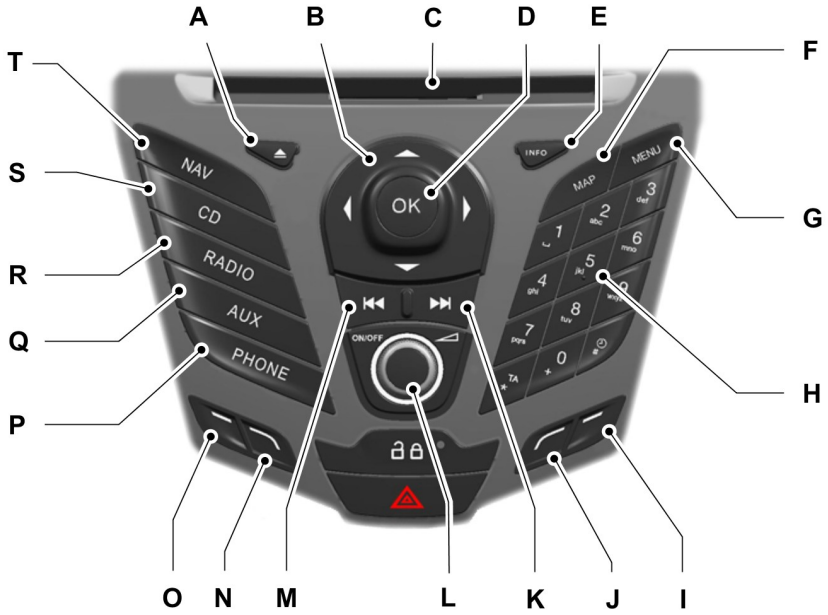
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/ NAVIGATION SYSTEM

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *An integrated multi function display is situated above the unit. This shows important information regarding control of your system. Additionally, there are various icons placed around the display screen which light up when a function is active (for example CD, Radio or Aux.)*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.



E156630

A **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD.

B **Cursor arrows:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices.

C **CD slot:** Where you insert a CD.

D **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.

E **INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB, IPod and Navigation information. If Navigation has been selected, pressing this button will show details of your current location or journey.

F **MAP** Press the button to enter the map screen. See **Navigation** (page 244).

G **MENU** Press the button to access different audio system features.

H **Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns.

I **Function button 4:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

J **Function button 3:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

K **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD.

L **On, Off and Volume:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.

M **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD.

N **Function button 2:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

O **Function button 1:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

P **PHONE:** Press the button to access the phone feature of the SYNC system by pressing PHONE then MENU. See separate manual.

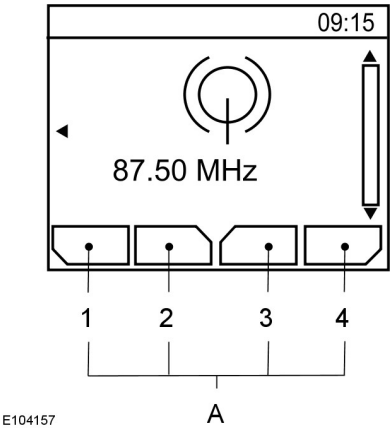
Q **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

R **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

S **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

T **NAV** Press the button to access the navigation system.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.



A Descriptions for function buttons 1-4

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. The description for the current function displays in the screen.

Radio Button

Press the **RADIO** button to select from the frequency bands available.

You can use the selector to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available frequency bands. Scroll to the required frequency band and press **OK**.

Station Tuning Control

Seek Tuning

Select a frequency band and briefly press the seek up or seek down button. Seek tuning will stop at the first radio station it locates.

Manual Tuning

1. Press function button 2.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the frequency band in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
3. Press **OK** to continue listening to a station.

Scan Tuning

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

1. Press function button 3.
2. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected frequency band.
3. Press function button 3 again or **OK** to continue listening to a station.

Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations, they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate frequency band and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a frequency band.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

You can repeat this on each frequency band and for each preset button.

Note: *When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies, and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Autostore Control

Note: *This will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM frequency band, and overwrite the previously stored stations. You can also store stations manually in the same way as other frequency bands.*

- Press and hold the **RADIO** button.
- When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the autostore presets.

Traffic Information Control

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

Turning Traffic Announcements On and Off

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the **TA** or **TRAFFIC** button. A TA display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, TP will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and a message will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** or **TRAFFIC** is turned off, then on again.

Note: *If traffic announcement is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non traffic announcement station no traffic announcements will be heard.*

Note: *When you are listening to a non traffic announcement station and turn traffic announcement off and on again a TP seek will occur.*

Traffic Announcement Volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming traffic announcement broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

Ending Traffic Announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** during the announcement.

Note: *If you press **TA** or **TRAFFIC** at any other time it will switch all announcements off.*

Automatic Volume Control

When available, automatic volume control adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

Press the **MENU** button.

Action	Message
1	Audio settings
2	Adaptive volume

1. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
2. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
3. Press the **MENU** button to return.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

News Broadcasts

The audio unit may interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM frequency band, radio data system or other enhanced network linked stations.

The display will indicate there is an incoming announcement, during news broadcasts. When the audio unit interrupts for a news broadcast the preset volume level will be the same as traffic announcements.

Press the **MENU** button.

Action	Message
1	Audio settings
2	News

1. Turn on or off with the **OK** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button to return.

Alternative Frequencies

The majority of programs that broadcast on the FM frequency band have a program identification code, it can be recognized by audio units.

When your vehicle moves from one transmission area to another with the alternative frequencies tuning switched on, this function will search for the strongest station signal.

Under certain conditions, however, alternative frequencies tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and if necessary, it will search once across the selected frequency band for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, AF may appear in the display.

Press the **MENU** button.

Action	Message
1	Audio settings
2	Alt. frequency

1. Turn on or off with the **OK** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button to return.

Regional Mode

Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centered on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network caries the same programming.

Regional mode on: This prevents random alternative frequency switches when neighboring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode off: This allows a larger coverage area if neighboring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause random alternative frequency switches if they are not.

Press the **MENU** button.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Action	Message
1	Audio settings
2	RDS regional

1. Turn on or off with the **OK** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button to return.

DIGITAL RADIO

The system allows you to listen to DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast) radio stations.

Note: *Coverage differs from region to region and will influence the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally.*

The following formats are supported:

- DAB
- DAB+
- DMB-Audio (Digital Multimedia Broadcasting).

Ensembles

Ensembles contain a group of radio stations. Each ensemble can consist of several different radio stations.

The radio station name displays below the ensemble name.

Note: *When you tune from one ensemble to another, it can take a while until the system synchronizes to the next ensemble. The system mutes during synchronization.*

Selecting Radio Band

DAB1 and DAB2 operate in the same way. You can store up to 10 different presets on each band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select **DAB1** or **DAB2**.

Radio Station Tuning Control

Press the **RADIO** button and select **DAB1** or **DAB2**. Both preset banks operate in the same way and can store up to 10 different preset radio stations.

Note: *When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning will skip to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio will briefly mute.*

Seek Tuning

1. Press a seek button. The system will stop at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen.

Radio Station List

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press function button 1.
2. Press the left or right arrow buttons to change ensembles. Press the up or down arrow button to navigate to your required radio station.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Note: *The display will only show radio stations in the current ensemble.*

Manual Tuning

1. Press function button 2.
2. Press the left or right arrow button to tune up or down the waveband in small increments. Press and hold to move through the waveband quickly.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Note: *Seek tuning is also possible within this screen.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store up to 10 favorite radio stations from any ensemble in each preset bank.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the radio station has been stored. The system will mute momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored press a preset button at any time to select a favourite radio station.

Note: *Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system will mute when this happens.*

Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on, select a radio station and press function button 3.

Note: *Extra information may not always be available.*

Service Linking

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system will automatically switch to the corresponding FM radio station.

You can switch this feature on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 64).

Note: *If a DAB radio station has no corresponding FM radio station, the audio will mute when attempting to switch.*

Note: *The system will display the FM symbol when DAB and FM radio stations link.*

AUDIO INPUT JACK

WARNINGS

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.

Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when your vehicle is in moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.

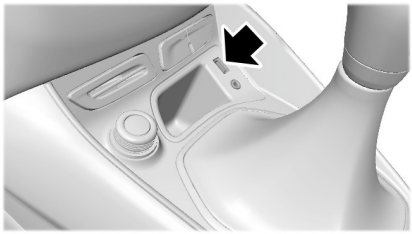
The auxiliary input jack allows you to connect and play music from your portable music player through your vehicle speakers. You can use any portable music player designed for use with headphones. Your audio extension cable must have male one-eighth inch (three and one-half millimeter) connectors at each end.

1. Make sure your vehicle is stationary with the radio and portable music players turned off.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

2. Plug the extension cable from the portable music player into the auxiliary input jack.
3. Switch the radio on. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD.
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Switch the portable music player on and adjust its volume to half its maximum level.
6. Press **AUX** until **LINE** or **LINE IN** appears in the display. You should hear music from your device even if it is low.
7. Adjust the volume on your portable music player until it reaches the volume level of the FM station or CD. Do this by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

USB PORT



E173073

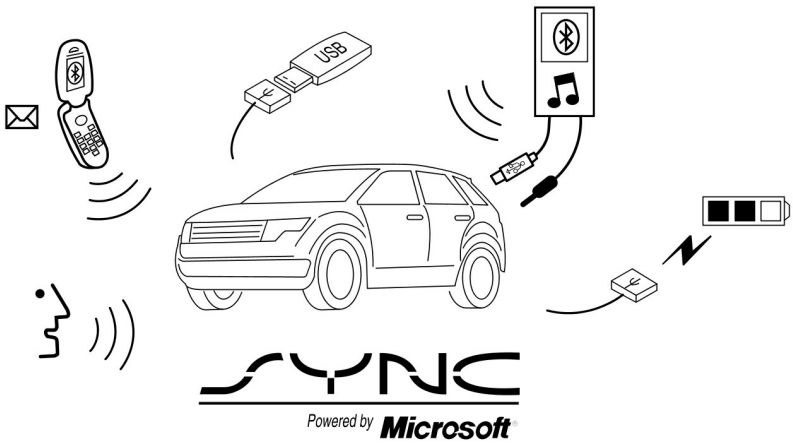
See **Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player** (page 230).

AUDIO TROUBLESHOOTING

Audio unit display	Rectification
Please check CD	General error message for CD fault conditions. For example cannot read the CD, data-CD inserted, etc. Make sure the disc is loaded correctly. Clean and re-try, or replace disc with known music disc. If error persists contact an authorized dealer.
CD drive malfunction	General error message for CD fault conditions. For example a mechanism fault.
CD drive high temp.	Ambient temperature too hot – unit will not work until it has cooled down.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

GENERAL INFORMATION



E142598

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone and portable media player.

This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls
- Access and play music from your media player
- Use Emergency Assistance
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands
- Stream music from your connected cell phone
- Select pre-defined text messages
- Use the advanced voice recognition system
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this).

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Support

For further support, see an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where you cannot step on them or they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. Refer to your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

Privacy Information

When a cell phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile that is linked to that cell phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This will include the history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cell phone profile, media player index and development log will remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your cell phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. See **Information Displays** (page 64).

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where system data can be accessed are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available. See **SYNC™ Applications and Services** (page 223).

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is around you.

Helpful Hints

Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish followed by a single beep. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.

Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.

You can interrupt the system at any time while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can also cancel a voice session at any time by pressing and holding the voice button.

Initiating a Voice Session



Press the voice button. A list of available commands appears in the display.

Command	Description
Bluetooth audio	Stream audio from your cell phone.
(cancel | stop | exit)	Cancel the requested action.
((line | AV | audio video) in | AUX | audio video)	Access the device connected to the auxiliary input jack.
(phone | Blackberry | iPhone | Mobile)	Make calls.
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])	Access the device connected to your USB port.
voice settings	Adjust the level of voice interaction and feedback.
[main menu] help	Hear a list of voice commands available in the current mode.

System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and your chosen level of interaction. You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

Adjusting the Interaction Level



Press the voice button. When prompted:

Command	Description
voice settings	Provides access to change the interaction level.

Then any of the following:

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First P

Command	Description
interaction mode advanced	Provides less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
interaction mode novice	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance.

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there is more than one possible response to your request. For example, the system may ask if the command phone is correct.

Press the voice button. When prompted:

Command	Description
voice settings	Provides access to change the confirmation prompt setting.

Then any of the following:

Command	Description
confirmation prompts off	Makes a best guess from the command. You may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
confirmation prompts on	Clarifies your voice command with a short question.

The system creates suggestion lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice commands. When switched on, the system may prompt you with as many as four possibilities for clarification.

Command	Description
media candidate lists off	Makes a best guess from the media suggestion list. The system may occasionally ask you questions.
media candidate lists on	Clarifies your voice command for media suggestions.
phone candidate lists off	Makes a best guess from the cell phone suggestion list. The system may occasionally ask you questions.
phone candidate lists on	Clarifies your voice command for cell phone suggestions.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Changing the Voice Settings

You can change the voice settings using the information and entertainment display.

Press the **MENU** button.

Action	Message
1	SYNC-Settings
2	Voice settings

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download are cell phone dependent features. To check your cell phone's compatibility, refer to your device's manual or visit the regional Ford website.

Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

Note: *You must switch the ignition and radio on.*

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button. When the audio display indicates that no phones are paired, select the option to add.
3. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your cell phone to start the pairing process.
4. When prompted on your cell phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Depending on your cell phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone (the cell phone the system automatically tries to connect with first when you switch the ignition on), downloading your phonebook, etc.



The information display may show your cell phone's battery charge level and signal strength.

Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Note: *You must switch the ignition and radio on.*

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button.
3. Select the option for Bluetooth devices.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.
6. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your device to start the pairing process.
7. When prompted on your cell phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

The system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone, downloading your phonebook, etc.

Cell Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

Command	Action
call (someone | [[a] name])	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> at home	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> at work	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> in office	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> on cell	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> on other	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
dial [[a] number]	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
([go to] privacy [on] | transfer to phone | handsfree off)	These commands are only available during a call.
(hold call [on] | (put | place) call on hold)	These commands are only available during a call.
(hold call off | take call off hold)	These commands are only available during a call.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Command	Action
mute [call] [on]	These commands are only available during a call.
(mute [call] off | Unmute [call])	These commands are only available during a call.
join (call | calls)	These commands are only available during a call.

Phonebook Commands

When you ask the system to access a phonebook name, number, etc., the requested information appears in the audio display.

Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

Command	Action
call (someone | [[a] name])	To call the contact.
dial [[a] number]	112 (one-one-two), 700 (seven hundred) etc.
Pound	
Number	0 (zero) to 9 (nine)
Asterisk	
clear	Deletes all entered digits
(delete | correct)	Deletes the last set of entered digits.
Plus	
Star	

Note: *To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or any button on the audio unit.*

Menu Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Command
(turn ringer on | silent mode off)
(turn ringer off | silent mode [on])

Words in parenthesis are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command.

Making a Call

Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

Command	Action	
call (someone | [[a] name])		
dial [[a] number]	Followed by a number. When the system confirms the number say:	dial [[a] number]

To erase the last spoken digit say:

Command	Action
(delete | correct)	Or press the left arrow button on the audio unit.

To erase all spoken digits say:

Command	Action
clear	Or press and hold the left arrow button on the audio unit.

To end the call, press the end call button on the steering wheel or select the end call option in the audio display and press **OK**.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Receiving a Call

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the accept call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the accept call option in the audio display. Press the **OK** button.
- Reject the call by pressing the reject call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the reject call option in the audio display. Press the **OK** button.
- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

Cell Phone Options During an Active Call

During an active call, you have extra menu features which become available, for example putting a call on hold.

To access this menu, choose one of the options available at the bottom of the audio display or select the option for more.

Message	Description and Action
Mic. off	Turn your vehicle's microphone off. To turn the microphone on, select the option again.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cell phone for a more private conversation. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is private.
Hold	Put an active call on hold. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is on hold.
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system numeric keypad, for example numbers for passwords.
Join calls	Join two separate calls. The system supports a maximum of three callers on a multi-party or conference call. 1. Select the option for more. 2. Access the desired contact through the system or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, select the option for more. 3. Scroll to the option to join calls and press the **OK** button.
Phonebook	Access your phonebook contacts. 1. Select the option for more. 2. Scroll to the option for phonebook and press the **OK** button. 3. Scroll through your phonebook contacts.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Message	Description and Action
	4. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 5. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Call history	Access your call history log. 1. Select the option for more. 2. Scroll to the option for call history appears and press the **OK** button. 3. Scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed). 4. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 5. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.

Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu

You can access your call history, phonebook, sent text messages as well as access cell phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features such as emergency assistance.

The system attempts to automatically re-download your phonebook and call history each time your cell phone connects to the system. You must turn on the auto download feature if your cell phone supports it.

Note: *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the cell phone menu.
2. Select one of the options available.

Message	Description and Action
Dial a number	Dial a number using the audio system numeric keypad.
Redial	Redial the last number called (if available). Press the **OK** button to select.
Phonebook	Access your downloaded phonebook. 1. Press the **OK** button to confirm and enter. You can use the options at the bottom of the screen to quickly access an alphabetical category. You can also use the letters on the keypad to jump in the list. 2. Scroll through your phonebook contacts.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Message	Description and Action
	3. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 4. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Call history	Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select either incoming calls, outgoing calls or missed calls. Press the **OK** button to make your selection. 3. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Speed Dial	Select one of 10 speed dial entries. To set a speed dial entry, go to the phonebook and press and hold one of the numbers on the audio system numeric keypad.
Text messaging	Send, download and delete text messages.
BT Devices	Access the option for Bluetooth device menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on or off, delete).
Phone settings	View various settings and features on your cell phone.
Emergency Assistance	Turn the SYNC emergency assistance feature on or off.

Text Messaging

The system allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

Note: *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

Receiving a Text Message

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the audio display indicates you have a new message.

You have these options:

- Select the listen option to have the system read the message to you.
- Select the view option to open the text message. Select the ignore option or do nothing and the message goes into your text message inbox. Once selected, you have the ability to have the message read out to you, to view other messages or to select the more option.
- Press the voice button and say "Read text message".
- Select the more option and use the arrow buttons to scroll through further options.

Note: *Your cell phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

Choose from the following:

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Message	Action
Reply to sender	Press the **OK** button to access and then scroll through the list of pre-defined messages to send.
Call sender	Press the **OK** button to call the sender of the message.
Forward msg.	Press the **OK** button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number.

Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select the text messaging option, then press the **OK** button.

Choose from the following:

Message	Description and Action
New	When you select the option to send a text message, a list of pre-defined messages appear in the audio display. Allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.
View	Allows you to read the full message and in addition provides the option to have the message read out to you by the system. To go to the next message select the more option. This allows you to reply to the sender, call the sender or forward the message.
Delete	Allows you to delete current text messages from the system (not your cell phone). The audio display indicates when all your text messages have been deleted.
More...	Allows you to delete all messages or to manually trigger a download of all unread messages from your cell phone.

Sending a Text Message

1. Select the send option when the desired selection is highlighted in the audio display.
2. Select the confirmation option when the contact appears and press the **OK** button again to confirm when the system asks if you would like to send the message. Each text message is sent with a pre-defined signature.

Note: *You can send text messages either by choosing a contact from the phonebook and selecting the text option from the audio display or by replying to a received message in the inbox.*

Note: *Only one recipient is allowed per text message.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings

These are cell phone dependent features. Your cell phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ringtone, text message notification, modify your phonebook and set up automatic download.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the phone settings option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Message	Description and Action
Set as master	If this option is checked, the system will use this cell phone as the master when there is more than one cell phone paired to the system. This option can be changed for all paired cell phones (not only for the active one) using the Bluetooth devices menu.
Phone status	See the cell phone name, provider name, cell phone number, signal level and battery level. When done, press the left arrow button to return to the cell phone status menu.
Set ringtone	Select which ringtone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's or your cell phone's). If your cell phone supports in-band ringing, your cell phone's ringtone sounds when you choose the cell phone ringtone option. 1. Press the **OK** button to select and scroll to hear each ringtone. 2. Press the **OK** button to select.
Text msg notify	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. Press the **OK** button to turn the audible tone on or off.
Phonebook pref.	Modify the contents of your phonebook, e.g. add, delete, download. Press the **OK** button to select and scroll between:

Choose from the following:

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Message	Description and Action
Add contacts	Push the desired contacts on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual on how to push contacts. Press the **OK** button to add more contacts from your phonebook.
Delete	When a message asking you to delete appears, select the option to confirm. Press the **OK** button to delete the current phonebook and call history. The system takes you back to the menu for phone settings.
Download now	Press the **OK** button to select and download your phonebook to the system.
Auto-download	When automatic download is switched on, any changes, additions or deletions saved in the system since your last download are deleted. When automatic download is switched off, your phonebook will not be downloaded when your cell phone connects to the system. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your paired cell phone is connected to the system. Check or uncheck this option to automatically download your phonebook each time your cell phone connects to the system. Downloading times are cell phone dependent and quantity dependent.

Bluetooth Devices

This menu provides access to your Bluetooth devices. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options. It allows you to add, connect and delete devices and set a cell phone as primary.

Bluetooth Devices Menu Options

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the Bluetooth device option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Message	Description and Action
Add	Pair additional cell phones to the system. 1. Select the option to add to start the pairing process. 2. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for **SYNC** on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Message	Description and Action
	3. When prompted on your cell phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful. 4. When the option to set the cell phone as the primary cell phone appears, select either yes or no. 5. Depending on the functionality of your cell phone, you may be asked extra questions (for example. if you would like to download your phonebook). Select either yes or no to confirm your response.
Delete	After deleting a cell phone from the list, the cell phone can only be connected again by repeating the full pairing process. Select the delete option and confirm when the system asks to delete the selected device.
Master	The system attempts to connect with the primary cell phone every time you switch the ignition on. When a cell phone is selected as primary, it appears first in the list and is marked with an asterisk. Set a previously paired cell phone as your primary cell phone. Select the master option to confirm the primary cell phone.
Conn.	Connect a previously paired cell phone. You can only have one cell phone connected at a time to use the cell phone functionality. When another cell phone is connected, the previous cell phone will be disconnected from the telephone services. The system allows you to use different Bluetooth devices for the cell phone functionality and the Bluetooth audio music playback feature at the same time.
Discon.	Disconnects the selected cell phone. Select this option and confirm when asked to. After disconnecting a cell phone, it can be connected again without repeating the full pairing process.

System Settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select the SYNC settings option, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Message	Description and Action
Bluetooth on	Check or uncheck this option to turn the Bluetooth interface of the system on or off. Select this option then press the **OK** button to change the option's status.
Set defaults	This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. Return to the factory default settings.
Master reset	Completely erase all information stored on the system (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to the factory default settings. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. The display indicates when complete and the system takes you back to the previous menu.
Install on SYNC	Install applications or software updates you have downloaded. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. There must be a valid SYNC application or update available on the USB thumb drive in order to finish an installation successfully.
System info	Display the system's version numbers as well as its serial number. Press the **OK** button to select.
Voice settings	The voice settings submenu contains various options. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 209).
Browse USB	Browse the actual menu structure of the connected USB device. Press the **OK** button and use the up or down arrows to scroll through the folders and files. Use the left or right arrows to enter and leave a folder. Media content can be directly selected for playback from this menu.
Emergency Assistance	You can turn the emergency assistance feature on or off. See **SYNC™ Applications and Services** (page 223).

SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES

A list of available applications appears. Each application may have its own specific settings.

Press the **MENU** button to enter the system menu.

Note: *Some versions of SYNC may operate differently. Press the **PHONE** button instead of the **MENU** button to access the Emergency Assistance menu.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	Scroll to this option, and then press **OK**.

SYNC Emergency Assistance

WARNINGS

For this feature to work, your cell phone must have Bluetooth and be compatible with the system.

Always place your cell phone in a secure location inside your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the cell phone which could prevent this feature from working correctly.

Unless the feature setting is switched on prior to a crash, the system will not attempt to place an emergency call which could delay the response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death. Do not wait for the system to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services by dialing 112 (the wireless emergency number that works in most European countries) through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information about the system and Emergency Assistance, visit the regional Ford website.

Note: *Before selecting this feature, you must read the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *When you switch this feature on or off, that setting applies for all paired cell phones. If you have turned this feature off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch on the ignition, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown or both.*

Note: *Every cell phone operates differently. While this feature works with most cell phones, some cell phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

Note: *Make sure you are familiar with the information about airbag deployment. See* ***Supplementary Restraints System*** *(page 32).*

Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Action
SYNC-Apps	Press **OK**.
Emergency Assistance	Press **OK**. Select the option you require and press **OK**.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Display Options

If you switch on this feature, a confirmation message appears in the display.

If you switch off this feature, a dialog will appear in the display, which allows you to set a voice reminder.

Off with voice reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without voice reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your cell phone connects.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

Note: *This feature only works in a European country or region where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. Visit the regional Ford website for details.*

In the Event of a Crash

Note: *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off (which may turn on Emergency Assistance). However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to dial 112.*

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to dial 112.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant function button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

Note: *While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.*

Note: *During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.*

Note: *It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.*

Note: *It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.*

Note: *The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.*

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a European country or region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

Important Information about the Emergency Assistance Feature

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following markets: Albania, Belarus, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia, Netherlands, Ukraine, Moldova and Russia.

Visit the regional Ford website for latest details.

Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

SYNC AppLink

The system enables voice and manual control of SYNC AppLink enabled smartphone apps. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and manual controls.

Note: *You must pair and connect your smartphone to SYNC to access AppLink.*

Note: *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.*

Note: *Android users need to connect the phone to SYNC using Bluetooth.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Note: *For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit the Ford website.*

Note: *Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.*

To Access Using the SYNC Menu

Scroll through the list of available applications and press **OK** to select an app. Once an app is running through SYNC, press the right arrow button to access the app menu. You can access various app features from here, for example thumbs up and thumbs down. Press the left arrow button to exit the app menu.

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	Scroll to this option, and then press **OK**.
Find new Apps	Select this option if the app required is not listed.

Note: *If a SYNC AppLink compatible app cannot be found, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.*

To Access Using Voice Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Command	Description and Action
mobile (apps | applications)	Say the name of the application after the tone. The application will start. While an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app.

The following voice commands are always available:

Command	Description and Action
[main menu] help	Use this command to hear a list of available voice commands.
mobile (apps | applications)	The system will prompt you to say the name of the app to start it.
list [mobile] (apps | applications)	The system will list all of the currently available mobile apps.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Command	Description and Action
find [new] [mobile] (apps | applications)	The system will search your connected mobile device for SYNC compatible apps.
<the name of the app>	Say the name of an app to start it on SYNC.
<the name of the app> Help	The system will list the available voice commands for the requested app.
(quit | exit | close)	Use this command followed by the name of the app.

Enabling and Disabling Push Notifications

Some apps can send push notifications. A push notification is an alert from an app running in the background and is delivered by voice, pop up or both. This may be particularly useful for news or location based apps.

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	
Settings	
All Apps	If push notifications are supported this setting will be listed. Select to enable or disable the feature as required.

Enabling SYNC Mobile Apps

To use the system you must consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates, using the data plan associated with the connected device.

Data is sent to Ford in the United States through the connected device. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

Note: *Standard data rates will apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

App Status

You can view the current status of an app in the settings menu. There are three possible statuses:

Message	Description and Action
Update needed	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.
Up-to-date	No update is required.
Updating...	The system is trying to receive an update.

Options in the settings menu:

Message	Description and Action
Request Update	If an update is required and you want to manually request the update, for example when you are in a Wi-Fi hotspot.
Disable Updates	Select this option to disable automatic updates.

App Permissions

Permissions are divided by groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu.

When you launch an app using SYNC, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example:

- To allow your vehicle to provide vehicle information to the app including, but not limited to: Fuel level, fuel consumption, engine speed, battery voltage, odometer, VIN, external temperature, gear position, tire pressure, ambient temperature, date and time.
- To allow your vehicle to provide driving characteristic information, including, but not limited to: MyKey, seat belt status, engine speeds, braking events, brake pedal switch, acceleration, accelerator pedal position, clutch pedal switch, trip length, trip time, trip cost, percent engine on time, and percent of time at speed.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

- To allow your vehicle to provide location information, including: GPS and speed.
- To allow the app to send push notifications using the vehicle display and voice capabilities while running in a background state.

Note: *You will only need to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC.*

Note: *We are not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve us to provide to an app.*

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your media player through your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, for example artist or albums.

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any media player including: iPod, Zune, Plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats, for example MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

Confirm that the USB device has been formatted correctly and has the following specifications:

- USB 2.0.
- File format must be FAT16/32.
- Supply current not greater than 500mA.

Note: *NTFS file format is not supported.*

The format of the audio files on the USB device must be:

- MP3.
- Non DRM protected WMA.
- WAV.
- AAC.

Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port

Note: *If your media player has a power switch, make sure you switch on the device.*

To Connect Using Voice Commands

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Description and Action
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. Refer to the media voice commands.

You do not need to say words that appear within square brackets. For example, for where (USB [stick] | iPOD | MP3 [player]) appears, you can say USB or USB stick.

To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the **AUX** button until an initializing message appears in the display.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	Depending on how many media files are on your connected device, an indexing message may appear in the display. When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the playback menu.

Choose from the following:

Message
Play all
Playlists
Songs
Artists
Albums
Genres
Browse USB
Reset USB
Exit

What's Playing?

At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags of the current track, if populated.

Media Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Description and Action
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where; who plays this (what's | what is) playing, you must say; who plays this (what's or what is) playing.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Then any of the following:

Voice Command	
play	
pause	
play [album] [by [artist]]	*
Play all	
play [artist]	*
play [genre]	*
[play] next track	
play [playlist]	*
[play] previous track	
play [song | track | title | file]	*
repeat off	
repeat one [on]	
(browse | search | show) album	
(browse | search | show) artist	
(browse | search | show) genre	

Voice Command
(browse | search | show) playlist
(browse | search | show) all (album | albums)
(browse | search | show) all (artist | artists)
(browse | search | show) all (genre | genres)
(browse | search | show) all (playlist | playlists)
(browse | search | show) all (song | songs | title | titles | file | files | track | tracks)
shuffle [all] [on]
shuffle off
[play] (similar music | more like this)
((who's | who is) this | who plays this | (what's | what is) playing [now] | (what | which) (song | track | artist) is this | (who's | who is) playing | (what's | what is) this)

* This voice command is not available until indexing is complete.

Voice Command Guide

Voice Command	Description and Action
(browse | search | show) genre	The system searches all the data from your indexed music and if available, begins to play the chosen type of music.
[play] (similar music | more like this)	The system compiles a playlist and then plays similar music to what is currently playing from the USB port using indexed metadata information.
(browse | search | show) artist	The system searches for a specific artist, track or album from the music indexed through the USB port.
(browse | search | show) album	The system searches for a specific artist, track or album from the music indexed through the USB port.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

The system is also capable of playing music from your cell phone through Bluetooth.

To switch the Bluetooth audio on, use the **AUX** or **Source** button or press the voice button and when prompted and say:

Voice Command	Description and Action
Bluetooth audio	

Then any of the following:

Voice Command	Description and Action
pause	
play	
[play] next track	
[play] previous track	

Press **AUX** to select USB playback.

Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select how to play your music, for example by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat, and to find similar music or reset the index of your USB devices.

Message	Description and Action
Options	This will enter the media menu.

Then any of the following:

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Message	Description and Action
Shuffle	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Repeat track	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Similar music	You can play similar types of music to the current playlist from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each track to compile a playlist. The system then creates a new list of similar tracks and then begins playing. Each track must have the metadata tags populated for this feature. With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks will not be available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in mass storage device mode they are available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. The system places unknowns into any unpopulated metadata tag.
Reset SYNC USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

Accessing Your USB Song Library

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press **AUX** to select USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	This menu allows you to select and play your media files by artist, album, genre, playlist and track or even to browse what is on your USB device.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options to scroll through and select:

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Message	Description and Action
Play all	Play all indexed media files from your playing device one at a time in numerical order.* 1. Press **OK** to select. The first track title appears in the display.
Playlists	Access your playlists from formats, ASX, M3U, WPL or MTP.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired playlist, and then press **OK**.
Songs	Search for and play a specific indexed track. * 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired track, and then press **OK**.
Artists	Sort all indexed media files by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then plays all artists and tracks alphabetically.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired artist, and then press **OK**.
Albums	Sort all indexed media files by albums.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired albums, and then press **OK**.
Genres	Sort indexed music by genre type.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired genre, and then press **OK**.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	Browse all supported media files on your media player connected to the USB port. You can only view media files that are compatible with SYNC; other saved files are not visible. 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to browse indexed media files on your flash drive, and then press **OK**.
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete, you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

* You can use the buttons at the bottom of the audio display to jump to a certain alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the numeric keypad to jump in the list.

Bluetooth Devices and System Settings

You can access these menus using the audio display. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 212).

SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the regional Ford website.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
A lot of background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC is not set to off.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
		Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to your cell phone's memory.
		Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch off the auto download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
	iPhone	• Go to your cell phone's Settings. • Go to the Bluetooth Menu.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
		• Make sure the connection status shows Not Connected. • Press the blue circle to enter the next menu. • Turn on Show Notifications. • Turn on Sync Contacts. Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC. Repeat these steps for every other Sync vehicle you are connected to. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC if it is unlocked. Replying to text messages using SYNC is not supported by iPhone. Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.
		Access the text messaging menu of SYNC to see if your cell phone supports the feature. Press the **PHONE** button and then scroll and select the option for text messaging, then press **OK**.
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Try switching off the device, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure correctly insert the USB cable to the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC and press play on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
When I connect my iPhone or iPod Touch through the USB and Bluetooth Audio at the same time, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	From the iPhone or iPod Touch music now playing screen, select the audio device airplay icon at the very bottom of your iPhone or iPod Touch screen.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through Bluetooth Audio, select SYNC.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through USB, select Dock Connector.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	The microphone for the system is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Say the song or artist exactly as the system saved it. If you say, "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If the song titles are in capital letters, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	Do not use special characters in the title, as the system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands at the beginning of the cell phone section.
		You can also use the cell phone and media suggestion lists to get a list of possible suggestions when the system cannot fully understand you. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 209).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Make sure you are saying the name exactly as the system saved it. For example, if the contact name is Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".
		The system works better if you list full names such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".
	Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar or they may contain special characters.	Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE as the system does not recognize them.
	Your phonebook contacts may be in capital letters.	If the contacts are in capital letters, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press **PHONE**. Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example," play artist Madonna).
My previous Bluetooth voice control system allowed me to control the radio, CD, and climate control systems. Why can I not control these systems with SYNC?	The focus of SYNC is to control your mobile devices and the content stored on them.	SYNC offers significant capability beyond the previous system such as dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, " play artist Madonna).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

General		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC remains in the current active language.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, play artist Madonna).

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Press the relevant button on the unit bezel to access the system functions. This will take you into the selected mode.

For instructions on how to operate the audio unit and the available navigation features, see the relevant audio unit procedure. See **Audio System** (page 184).

Loading Map Data

WARNINGS

The indicated maximum speed may not be applicable to your vehicle. It is always your responsibility to control your vehicle, supervise any system and obey the correct speed limit. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.

The front glass on the liquid crystal display may break if hit with a hard object. If the glass breaks, do not touch the liquid crystalline material. In case of contact with the skin, wash immediately with soap and water.

Note: *Do not switch the ignition on or attempt to start the engine while the software is updating.*

Note: *Do not clean the unit with solvents or aerosol cleaning agents. Use only a damp cloth.*

Note: *The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, see an authorized dealer.*

Note: *The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to remove the card without first pushing it in. This could cause damage.*



E129900

1. Load the navigation SD card into the slot.
2. Press the **NAV** button. The road safety warning confirms the map data import was successful.
3. The system is now ready to use.

For map updates and system upgrades, see an authorized dealer.

Note: *You can only use Ford licensed data.*

Road Safety

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Note: *You are ultimately responsible for the safe operation of your vehicle and must evaluate whether it is safe to follow route suggestions. Navigation features are provided only as an aid. Driving decisions based on observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations must be observed. Do not follow route suggestions if they would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate due to errors, changes in roads, traffic or driving conditions.*

Safety Information

If detailed viewing of route instructions is necessary, pull off the road when it is safe to do so and park your vehicle.

Setting a Route

Press the **NAV** button and select:	
Destination input	Starting at the top, select the country followed by either the postcode or city and street name, together with the house number or intersection. Use the arrow buttons to enter the destination details.
Start guidance	Select this after entering sufficient information.

Note: *After the first entry, the country selected will remain the default option until you manually change it.*

The route is calculated and the screen returns to the main navigation screen. If prompted, select the type of route you require first. Follow the screen and voice prompts to reach your destination.

Note: *If required you can select different character screens by using the up and down arrow buttons.*

Note: *If you only need to navigate to a city center, just enter the city name and start guidance.*

Note: *If you only need to navigate to a district, within a city for example, just enter the district name and start guidance.*

Menu Structure

You can access the menu using the information and entertainment display control. See **Information Displays** (page 64).

For a description on some menu items refer to the relevant table.

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Navigation Menu Structure

Route	Active guidance
	Route sections list
	Block next section
	Unblock route sections
Destination input	Country
	City/postcode
	Street
	District
	Start guidance
Traffic	TA
	TMC for route
	All TMC
	Block next section
	Route sections list
	Unblock route sections
Home address	Start guidance
	Change address
Last destinations	
Favourites	Favourites (A-Z)
Points of interest	POIs nearby
	Near destination
	Along motorway
	POIs near address
	Search by name
Tour planning	New tour
	Stored tours

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Store position		
Route options	Route	Eco
		Fast
		Short
		Always ask
	Driver:	Leisurely
		Normal
		Fast
	Eco settings	Trailer:
		Roof box
	Dynamic	
	Motorway	
	Tunnel	
	Ferry/motorail	
	Toll	
	Seasonal roads	
	Toll sticker	
Special functions	GPS info	
	System info	
	Enter position	
	Demo mode	

Route Options

Press the **NAV** button and scroll to route options. You can then set your route options for any of the following.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Function		Description
Route:	Always ask	Select to make sure that you are always given the choice of route option for your journey.
Eco		Uses the most fuel efficient route. Your driving style will influence this.
Fast		Uses the fastest route possible.
Short		Uses the shortest distance possible.
Driver:	Leisurely	This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a leisurely drive to the destination.
	Normal	This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a normal drive to the destination.
	Fast	This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a fast drive to the destination.
Eco settings	Trailer:	Use this feature to change the economy settings of your journey relating to whether or not you are towing a trailer and if so the size of trailer being towed.
	Roof box	Use this feature to change the economy settings of your journey relating to the use of a roof box.
	Dynamic	When switched on, and if the unit is receiving a valid traffic message channel signal, the route will be automatically updated to take into account real time traffic incidents or congestion. This feature can be useful in avoiding delays or hold ups on journeys.
	Motorway	When switched off the system will avoid freeways on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Tunnel	When switched off the system will avoid tunnels on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Function		Description
	Ferry/motorail	When switched off the system will avoid ferry crossings and car train facilities on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Toll	When switched off the system will avoid toll roads on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Seasonal roads	When switched off the system will avoid seasonal roads (for example, mountain passes) on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Toll sticker	When switched off the system will avoid toll routes and automatically update your route distance and timings.

Information

Press the information button to view details of your current location or journey. During active route guidance pressing this button will repeat the last navigation instruction.

Setting Your Navigation Preferences

Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.

Press the NAV button and choose any of the following options.

When You Select	You Can
Destination input	Enter your destination details (for example enter city names, enter street names or pick a place from a map).
Traffic	Choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route (for example, block sections on route).
Home address	See the location on the map currently stored as the home position. Only one entry can be saved as the home address.
Last destinations	Access a history of previous destinations entered in the system. Select the required repeat destination from the list.
Favourites	See a list of your saved favorites.
Points of interest	Search for and select points of interest nearby, on your route or at your destination. You can search by name or by category.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

When You Select	You Can
Tour planning	Set up and store a new tour by entering a number of different destinations and select the order in which you wish to visit them. You can also modify an existing tour or recall a previous tour. The system will automatically calculate and display your chosen journey.
Store position	Store and name your current position. This will automatically save in your favorites.
Route options	Set your route options from the available list.
Special functions	Select GPS and system information or a demonstration of the system functionality. Select a demonstration mode where the system will simulate a journey whilst the vehicle is stationary. You can manually select a vehicle start position.

Press the MENU button, select the navigation option and choose any of the following options.

When You Select	You Can
Route options	Set your route options.
Map display	Customize the map display for your journey (for example arrows on map, arrival times and map content).
Assistance options	Customize display information for your journey (for example signs, lanes and speed limits). Turn the hazard warning feature on or off.
Personal data	Delete personal data (for example your home address).
Reset all settings	Reset the navigation settings.

Storing Your Home Address

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select the home address option.
3. Enter the required details using the arrow buttons.
4. Press the confirm function button.

Note: *Your last destination will automatically display if you go to change your home address.*

Adding a Favorite

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Scroll to the destination input option.
3. Enter the required details using the arrow buttons.
4. Press the store function button.

Note: *If you select store position, this will also save the destination in your favorites.*

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Selecting a Favorite

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select the favorites option.
3. Scroll to the required destination using the arrow buttons.
4. Press the **OK** button to start navigation.

Adjusting the Navigation Voice Level

You can adjust the voice prompt level during an active voice prompt by using the volume control.

Note: *During active route guidance pressing the information button will repeat the last navigation instruction.*

Nav Audio Mixing

This feature allows you to adjust the volume mix between the audio unit and navigation voice level.

Tolerant Destination Input

This function will search a number of destinations with a similar spelling to what you have entered. This is helpful if you are unsure on how to spell a destination.

Tolerant	Press the **NAV** button and scroll to this destination input option before entering your destination details.

Then begin to input your destination. Press the **OK** button. The system will search for destinations with similar spellings. Use the arrow buttons to select a destination from the list and press the **OK** button to confirm your destination.

Route Displays

Map Display

Press the **MAP** button to view map mode. This view will show your current location with your vehicle in the center shown as an arrow surrounded by a circle. The arrow will face in the direction of travel.

The information on the top line gives the name of the current road, or the next road to take if a turn is approaching.

You can change the way the map is displayed by altering the zoom and orientation settings. Press function button one. The current map scale is shown on the display.

Map scale settings may be set between 0.05 miles to 500 miles or 50 meters to 500 kilometers, with an auto setting on the top. The auto setting continuously changes the map scale according to vehicle speed and the road type being driven.

You can use the arrow buttons to change the view to 2D, turn-by-turn, 3D or a clean view.

Zoom

This feature will automatically increase the zoom on the map display at times when you are required to make a turn, or perform more complex maneuvers. Shortly after the zoom scale will return to the previous level when in auto mode.

Manual: Press function button one and adjust the setting using the left or right arrow buttons. Press **OK** to confirm your setting.

Auto: Press function button one and using the up or down arrow key select the auto option. Press **OK** to confirm your setting.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Move

When you are in map mode, press function button two. You can now use the arrow buttons on the audio unit to move around the map.

Press function button two again to return to the original view.

Navigation Display

After commencing a navigation route, the default screen is the main navigation screen.

Once an active route is underway, guidance will be given by on-screen information and voice prompts. Whichever audio source you wish to leave the unit in, basic turn by turn and distance information will remain on the screen in the form of a graphic inset. You do not need to leave the unit on the main navigation screen when you are navigating a route. Press the **MAP** button at any time to return to the main navigation screen. Slightly more detailed information on your route may be available using the main navigation screen if required.

Hazard Spot Warning

The system supports a hazard spot warning feature which informs you with visible and audible feedback about hazardous traffic areas.

Assistance options	You can switch the system on and off using the information and entertainment display menu. Refer to this option in the navigation menu.

Note: *This feature is only available in certain countries.*

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase. See an authorized dealer.

Type Approvals





SD Logo is a trademark.

The navigation software is based in part on the work of the FreeType team © 2006

The navigation software is based in part on the work of the independent JPEG Group.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

WARNINGS

Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislation relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislation. Have any equipment fitted by an authorized dealer.

Radio frequency transmitter equipment (e.g. cell phones, amateur radio transmitters etc.) may only be fitted to your vehicle if they comply with the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

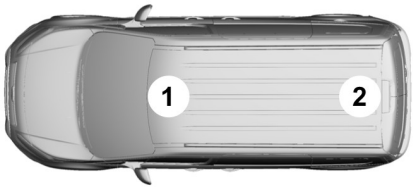
WARNINGS

Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.

Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

Keep antenna and power cables at least 4 inches (10 centimeters) from any electronic modules and airbags.

Note: *Only fit antennae in the positions shown to the roof of your vehicle.*



E164941

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1 – 30	50 W	2
30 – 54	50 W	1, 2
68 – 87.5	50 W	1, 2
142 – 176	50 W	1, 2
380 – 512	50 W	1, 2

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
806 – 940	10 W	1, 2
1200 – 1400	10 W	1, 2
1710 – 1885	10 W	1, 2
1885 – 2025	10 W	1, 2

Note: *After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.*

Check all electrical equipment:

- with the ignition on
- with the engine running
- during a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

SYNC® End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY") from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS") . Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.
- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates,

supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. $250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Adobe

Contains Adobe® [Flash® Player] or [AIR®] technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. This [Licensee Product] contains [Adobe® Flash® Player] [Adobe® AIR®] software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright ©1995-2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and AIR are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

End User Notice

Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information

This system Ford SYNC™ contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

Read and follow instructions: Before using your Windows Automotive- based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

Keep User's Guide in vehicle: When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

WARNING

Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

General Operation

Voice Command Control: Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

Prolonged Views of Screen: Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

Volume Setting: Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Use of Speech Recognition Functions: Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

Navigation Features: Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Distraction Hazard: Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

Let Your Judgment Prevail: Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

Route Safety: Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

Potential Map Inaccuracy: Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

Emergency Services: Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

TeleNav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software.

TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver,

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; (c) remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or (e) use the TeleNav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

4. Disclaimers

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

The TeleNav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to TeleNav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the TeleNav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to TeleNav's third party vendor licensors:

NavTeq End User License Agreement

END USER TERMS

The content provided ("Data") is licensed, not sold. By opening this package, or installing, copying, or otherwise using the Data, you agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this agreement, you are not permitted to install, copy, use, resell or transfer the Data. If you wish to reject the terms of this agreement, and have not installed, copied, or used the Data, you must contact your retailer or NAVTEQ North America, LLC ("NT") within thirty (30) days of purchase for a refund of your purchase price. To contact NT, please visit www.navteq.com.

The Data is provided for your personal, internal use only and may not be resold. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User License Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAVTEQ North America, LLC ("NT") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®.

NT holds a nonexclusive license from the United States Postal Service ® to publish and sell ZIP+4 ® information.

© United States Postal Service ® 2009. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service ® The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain Data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

License Limitations on Use: You agree that your license to use this Data is limited to and conditioned on use for solely personal, noncommercial purposes, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

License Limitations on Transfer: Your limited license does not allow transfer or resale of the Data, except on the condition that you may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if: (a) you retain no copies of the Data; (b) the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement; and (c) you transfer the Data in the exact same form as you purchased it by physically transferring the original media (e.g., the CD-ROM or DVD you purchased), all original packaging, all Manuals and other documentation. Specifically, Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

Additional License Limitations: Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NT in a separate written agreement, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, your license is conditioned on use of the Data as prescribed in this agreement, and you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

WARNING

This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic Data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty: This Data is provided to you "as is" , and you agree to use it at your own risk. NT and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: NT AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: NT AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NT OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control: You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit NT from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NT (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Severability: You and NT agree that if any portion of this agreement is found illegal or unenforceable, that portion shall be severed and the remainder of the Agreement shall be given full force and effect.

Governing Law: The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the personal jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users: If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial term" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use", and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

NAME:

NAVTEQ

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101

and is subject to the End User License Agreement under

which this Data was provided.

© 2011 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify NAVTEQ prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Wi-Fi hotspot data provided by JiWire, © 2013 JiWire.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6.240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007.

FCC ID: KMHSYNCG2

IC: 1422A-SYNCG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

A

A/C
See: Climate Control....74
About This Manual....5
Protecting the Environment....5
ABS
See: Brakes....105
ABS driving hints
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....105
Accessories
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation....8
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....46
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control....74
Air Vents....74
Center Air Vents....74
Side Air Vents....74
Alarm
See: Anti-Theft Alarm....43
Anti-Theft Alarm....43
Alarm System....43
Arming the Alarm....45
Disarming the Alarm....45
Guard Settings....44
Triggering the Alarm....44
Appendices....253
At a Glance....10
Audible Warnings and Indicators....63
Auto-Start-Stop....63
Headlamps On....63
Safety Belt Minder....63
Speed Limiter....63
Audio Control....46
Audio Input Jack....206
Audio System....184
General Information....184
Audio Troubleshooting....207
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/Navigation System....199
Alternative Frequencies....204
Automatic Volume Control....203
Autostore Control....203
News Broadcasts....204
Radio Button....202
Regional Mode....204
Station Preset Buttons....202
Station Tuning Control....202
Traffic Information Control....203
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC....194
Alternative Frequencies....198
Automatic Volume Control....198
Autostore Control....197
News Broadcasts....198
Radio Button....196
Regional Mode....199
Sound Button....196
Station Preset Buttons....197
Station Tuning Control....196
Traffic Information Control....197
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM....185
Alternative Frequencies....189
Bluetooth Audio Streaming....192
Declaration of Conformity....193
iPod....192
Making and Receiving Calls....191
News Broadcasts....188
Phone....189
Phone Menu Options....191
Radio Button....187
Regional Mode....189
Set Button....187
Station Preset Buttons....187
Station Tuning Control....187
Traffic Information Control....188
USB....192
Autolamps....52
Automatic Climate Control....76
Temperature Control....78
Auto-Start-Stop....96
To Re-Start the Engine....96
To Stop the Engine....96
Using Auto-Start-Stop....96
Autowipers....48

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Auxiliary Power Points....87
12 Volt DC Power Point....87
Location....87

B

Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....141
Bottle Holder....90
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check....151
Brakes....105
General Information....105
Breaking-In....126
Brakes and Clutch....126
Engine....126
Tires....126
Bulb Specification Chart....157

C

Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™....179
Capacities....179
Specifications....180
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel....180
Capacities....180
Specifications....181
Capacities and Specifications - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel....181
Capacities....181
Specifications....182
Capacities and Specifications....175
Cargo Nets....116
Installing and Removing the Cargo Net....116
Car Wash
See: Cleaning the Exterior....159
Catalytic Converter....101
Driving with a Catalytic Converter....101
Center Console....88
Center Instrument Panel Storage....88
Device Dock....88
Driver Instrument Panel Storage....89
Changing a Bulb....153
Central High Mounted Brake Lamp....156
Front Fog Lamps....155
Headlamp....154
Interior Lamp....157
License Plate Lamp....157
Reading Lamps....157
Rear Lamps....156
Side Repeaters....155
Changing a Fuse....139
Changing a Road Wheel....169
Installing a Road Wheel....173
Jacking and Lifting Points....170
Lowering the Spare Wheel....172
Lug Nuts....169
Removing a Road Wheel....172
Removing the Wheel Trim....172
Stowing the Flat Tire....174
Vehicle Jack....170
Vehicles with a Spare Wheel....169
Changing the 12V Battery....151
Changing the Wiper Blades....152
Changing the Front Wiper Blades....152
Rear Window Wiper Blades....152
Checking the Wiper Blades....152
Child Safety....22
Child Safety Locks....29
Left-Hand Side....29
Right-Hand Side....29
Child Seat Positioning....26
I-Size Child Seats....28
Cigar Lighter....87
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels....160
Cleaning the Exterior....159
Body Paintwork Preservation....159
Cleaning the Chrome Trim....159
Cleaning the Headlamps....159
Cleaning the Rear Window....159
Cleaning the Interior....159
Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens....160
Rear Windows....160
Safety Belts....159
Climate Control....74
Principle of Operation....74
Clock....66
Type 1....66
Type 2....66

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Cold Weather Precautions.....127
Coolant Check
See: Engine Coolant Check.....150
Cruise Control.....47
Principle of Operation.....112
Cruise control
See: Using Cruise Control.....112
Cup Holders.....88

D

Data Recording.....7
Daytime Running Lamps.....53
Diesel Particulate Filter.....93
Regeneration.....93
Digital Radio.....205
Direction Indicators.....54
DPF
See: Diesel Particulate Filter.....93
Driver Airbag.....32
Driver Knee Airbag.....34
Driving Aids.....114
Driving Hints.....126
Driving Through Water.....127
DRL
See: Daytime Running Lamps.....53

E

Eco Mode.....115
Resetting Eco Mode.....115
Type 1.....115
Type 2 and 3.....115
Economical Driving.....126
Accessories.....127
Anticipation.....126
Efficient Speed.....127
Electrical Systems.....127
Gear Shifting.....126
Tire Pressures.....126
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....253
End User License Agreement.....254
SYNC® End User License Agreement (EULA).....254
Engine Block Heater.....94
Using the Engine Block Heater.....94
Engine Coolant Check.....150
Adding Engine Coolant.....150
Engine Immobilizer
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....43
Engine Oil Check.....149
Adding Engine Oil.....150
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....149
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....149
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel.....149
Event Data Recording
See: Data Recording.....7
Exterior Mirrors.....56
Power Exterior Mirrors.....56

F

Fastening the Safety Belts.....30
Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy.....31
First Aid Kit.....129
Flat Tire Inflation
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....161
Floor Mats.....127
Fog Lamps - Front
See: Front Fog Lamps.....53
Fog Lamps - Rear
See: Rear Fog Lamps.....53
Folding Bulkhead.....119
Adjusting the Bulkhead.....119
Folding the Bulkhead.....119
Folding Tray.....89
Front Exterior Overview.....10
Front Fog Lamps.....53
Fuel and Refueling.....98
Fuel Consumption Figures.....182
1.0L EcoBoost.....182
1.5L DuraTorq-TDCi Diesel.....183
1.6L DuraTorq-TDCi Diesel.....183
Fuel Consumption.....103
Calculating Fuel Economy.....103
Filling the Fuel Tank.....103
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....99
Long-Term Storage.....99
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....99
Long-Term Storage.....99
Fuel Shutoff.....129
Ignition Switch.....129
Keyless Starting.....129

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Fuse Box Locations....132
Engine Compartment Fuse Box....132
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box....132
Fuses....132
Fuse Specification Chart....133
Engine Compartment Fuse Box....133
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box....136

G

Gauges....58
Fuel Gauge....59
Information Display....58
General Information on Radio Frequencies....36

H

Handbrake
See: Parking Brake....105
Hazard Warning Flashers....129
Headlamp Exit Delay....52
Headlamp Leveling....53
Head Restraints....81
Adjusting the Head Restraints....81
Removing the Head Restraints....82
Heated Exterior Mirrors....80
Heated Rear Window....80
Heated Seats....86
Heated Windows and Mirrors....79
Heated Exterior Mirrors....79
Heated Windows....79
Heated Windshield....79
Heating
See: Climate Control....74
Hill Start Assist....106
Switching the System On and Off....106
Using Hill Start Assist....106
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....78
Cooling the Interior Quickly....78
General Hints....78
Heating the Interior Quickly....78
Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions....79
Recommended Settings for Cooling....79
Recommended Settings for Heating....78
Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather....79
Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures....79
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....105
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....141

I

Ignition Switch....91
Information Displays....64
General Information....64
Information Messages....67
Installing Child Seats....22
Attaching a Child Seat With a Support Leg....25
Attaching a Child Seat With Top Tethers....25
Booster Seats....23
Child Seats for Different Mass Groups....23
ISOFIX Anchor Points....24
Instrument Cluster....58
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....52
Instrument Panel Overview - LHD....13
Instrument Panel Overview - RHD....14
Interior Lamps....54
Courtesy Lamp....54
Luggage Compartment Lamp....55
Reading Lamps....55
Interior Mirror....57
Auto-Dimming Mirror....57
Introduction....5

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....130
To Connect the Booster Cables.....130
To Start the Engine.....131

K

Keys and Remote Controls.....36

L

Lighting Control.....51
Headlamp Flasher.....52
High Beams.....51
Lighting Control Positions.....51
Parking Lamps.....51
Lighting.....51
General Information.....51
Load Carriers
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....118
Load Carrying.....116
General Information.....116
Locking and Unlocking.....39
Automatic Locking.....41
Automatic Re-Locking.....41
Configurable Unlocking.....42
Double Locking.....39
Locking.....39
Locking and Unlocking Confirmation.....39
Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside.....39
Locking the Doors Individually With the Key.....41
One-Stage Unlocking.....41
Opening the Double Rear Doors.....40
Opening the Manual Liftgate.....40
Opening the Sliding Door From Inside.....40
Two-Stage Unlocking.....41
Unlocking.....39
Locks.....39
Luggage Anchor Points.....116
Luggage Covers.....117
Removing the Cover.....118
Lug Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....169

M

Maintenance.....141
General Information.....141
Manual Climate Control.....75
Manual Liftgate.....42
Opening and Closing the Liftgate.....42
Manual Seats.....82
Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat.....83
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....83
Easy Entry Seat.....83
Front Passenger Folding Seat.....84
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....82
Recline Adjustment.....83
Manual Transmission.....104
Selecting Reverse Gear.....104
Message Center
See: Information Displays.....64
Mirrors
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....79
See: Windows and Mirrors.....56
Mobile Communications Equipment.....8

N

Navigation.....244
Hazard Spot Warning.....252
Information.....249
Loading Map Data.....244
Menu Structure.....245
Navigation Map Updates.....252
Road Safety.....244
Route Options.....247
Setting a Route.....245
Setting Your Navigation Preferences.....249
Type Approvals.....252

O

Oil Check
See: Engine Oil Check.....149
Opening and Closing the Hood.....141
Closing the Hood.....142
Opening the Hood.....141
Overhead Console.....89

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

P

Parking Aid....108
Rear Sensing System....108
Parking Aids....108
Principle of Operation....108
Parking Brake....105
Passenger Airbag....33
....33
Switching the Passenger Airbag Off....33
Switching the Passenger Airbag On....34
Passive Anti-Theft System....43
Arming the Engine Immobilizer....43
Coded Keys....43
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer....43
Principle of Operation....43
PATS
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....43
Power Door Locks
See: Locking and Unlocking....39
Power Windows....56
One-Touch Down....56
Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature....56

R

Rear Exterior Overview....11
Rear Fog Lamps....53
Rear Seats....84
Folding the Seat Forward....85
Rear View Camera....109
Switching the Rear View Camera Off....111
Switching the Rear View Camera On....109
Using the Display....110
Vehicles with Parking Aid....111
Rear View Camera
See: Rear View Camera....109
Rear Window Wiper and Washers....49
Intermittent Wipe....49
Rear Window Washer....50
Reverse Gear Wipe....50
Reduced Engine Performance....126
Refueling....101
Filling a Portable Fuel Container....102
Remote Control....36
Changing the Remote Control Battery....36
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function....36
Type 1....36
Type 2....37
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....160
Replacement Parts Recommendation....8
Collision Repairs....8
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs....8
Warranty on Replacement Parts....8
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....37
Roadside Emergencies....129
Roof Racks and Load Carriers....118
Running-In
See: Breaking-In....126
Running Out of Fuel....99
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container....100
Filling a Portable Fuel Container....99

S

Safety Belt Minder....31
Rear Safety Belt Minder....31
Switching the Safety Belt Minder Off....31
Safety Belts....30
Safety Precautions....98
Seats....81
Security....43
Side Airbags....34
Side Curtain Airbags....34
Sitting in the Correct Position....81
Sliding Door Window....57
Snow Chains
See: Using Snow Chains....166
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control....112
Speed Limiter....114
Switching Speed Limiter On and Off....114
Using Speed Limiter....114
Stability Control....107
Principle of Operation....107
Starter Switch
See: Ignition Switch....91

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Starting a Diesel Engine....92
Cold or Hot Engine....92
Failure to Start....93
Starting a Gasoline Engine....92
Cold or Hot Engine....92
Engine Idle Speed after Starting....92
Failure to Start....92
Flooded Engine....92
Starting and Stopping the Engine....91
General Information....91
Steering Wheel Lock....91
Steering Wheel....46
Storage Compartments....88
Supplementary Restraints System....32
Principle of Operation....32
Switching Off the Engine....94
Vehicles With a Turbocharger....94
Symbols Glossary....5
SYNC™ Applications and Services....223
In the Event of a Crash....225
Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off....224
SYNC AppLink....226
SYNC Emergency Assistance....224
SYNC™....208
General Information....208
SYNC™ Troubleshooting....236

T

Tailgate
See: Manual Liftgate....42
Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications....175
Temporary Mobility Kit....161
Checking the Tire Pressure....164
General Information....161
Inflating the Tire....162
Location....161
Using the Kit....161
Tire Care....165
Tire Inflation When Punctured
See: Temporary Mobility Kit....161
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....166
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System....167
How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures....169
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure....168
Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System....167
Tire Repair Kit
See: Temporary Mobility Kit....161
Tires
See: Wheels and Tires....161
Tow Ball....121
Driving With a Trailer....122
Driving Without a Trailer....123
Inserting the Tow Ball Arm....122
Maintenance....123
Removing the Tow Ball Arm....123
Unlocking the Tow Ball Arm Mechanism....121
Towbar Dimensions....177
Towing a Trailer....120
Trailer Lighting....121
When towing a trailer:....120
Towing Points....124
All Vehicles....124
Transit....124
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels....125
Towing....120
Trailer Sway Control....121
Transmission....104
Transmission
See: Transmission....104
Trip Computer....67
Distance Odometer....67

U

Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™, LHD....143
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™, RHD....144
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, LHD....145
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, RHD....146

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Under Hood Overview - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel, LHD.....147
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel, RHD.....148
Under Seat Storage.....90
Unique Driving Characteristics.....96
USB Port.....207
Using Cruise Control.....112
Switching Cruise Control On and Off.....112
Using Snow Chains.....166
Vehicles with Stability Control.....166
Using Stability Control.....107
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....230
Accessing Your USB Song Library.....234
Bluetooth Devices and System Settings.....236
Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port.....230
Media Menu Features.....233
Media Voice Commands.....231
What's Playing?.....231
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....212
Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu.....217
Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings.....220
Bluetooth Devices.....221
Cell Phone Options During an Active Call.....216
Cell Phone Voice Commands.....213
Making a Call.....215
Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time.....212
Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones.....212
Receiving a Call.....216
Text Messaging.....218
Using Voice Recognition.....209
Helpful Hints.....209
Initiating a Voice Session.....210
System Interaction and Feedback.....210
Using Winter Tires.....165

V

Vehicle Care.....159
Vehicle Dimensions - Tourneo.....175
Vehicle Dimensions - Transit.....176
Vehicle Identification Number.....179
Vehicle Identification Plate.....178
Vehicle Interior Overview.....12
Ventilation
See: Climate Control.....74
Vents
See: Air Vents.....74
VIN
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....179
Voice Control.....47

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....59
Anti-lock Braking System.....59
Anti-theft System.....59
Battery.....59
Brake System.....59
Cruise Control.....60
Direction Indicator.....60
Door Ajar.....60
Engine Coolant Temperature.....60
Engine Warning Lamps.....60
Exhaust Filter.....60
Front Airbag.....60
Front Fog Lamps.....60
Frost Warning Lamp.....61
Glow Plug.....61
Headlamp.....61
High Beam.....61
Hill Descent.....61
Hill Start Assist.....61
Low Fuel Level.....61
Low Oil.....61
Low Oil Pressure.....61
Low Tire Pressure.....61
Oil Service.....62
Power Steering.....62
Rear Fog Lamps.....62
Safety Belt Minder.....62
Shift Indicator.....62
Speed Limiter.....62
Stability Control.....62
Stability Control Off.....62
Start-Stop.....62
Water-In-Fuel.....62
Warning Triangle.....129
Washer Fluid Check.....151

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

Washers
See: Cleaning the Exterior....159
See: Wipers and Washers....48
Wheel Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....169
Wheels and Tires....161
General Information....161
Technical Specifications....174
Windows and Mirrors....56
Windshield Washers....49
Windshield Wipers....48
Intermittent Wipe....48
Speed Dependent Wipers....48
Winter Tires
See: Using Winter Tires....165
Wipers and Washers....48

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014.

Tourneo Courier/Transit Courier (C4A) Vehicles Built From: 19-06-2014, M1 Kombi/M1 Kombi Van/N1 Kombi/N1 Kombi Van/Van, ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en) enGBR, Edition date: 04/2014, First

ET7J-19A321-AKB (CG3621en)